

Doctiner
T H E
F O L L O W I N G
O F
C H R I S T.
I N F O U R B O O K S.

Written in LATIN

By THOMAS à KEMPIS.

Newly Translated into ENGLISH,
By R C D. D.

The THIRD EDITION.

LIVERPOOL:

Printed and Sold by JOHN SADLER, 1755.

6

T

T

pen.

Cul

abo

pod

by

abo

ven

of C

Ger

not

Cle

a S

A N
A B S T R A C T
O F T H E
L I F E
O F
T H O M A S à K E M P I S.

THOMAS HAMMERKEN, surnamed *à Kempis* from the Place of his Birth, which was *Kempen*, a little Town in the Diocese of *Cullen* in the *Higher-Germany*, was born about the Year of our Lord 1380, of poor, but honest and pious Parents ; by whom he was sent, when he was about thirteen Years of Age, to *Daventry*, the chief Town of the Province of *Overyssel* in the *Netherlands*, where *Gerardus Magnus*, a devout Priest, had not long before instituted a College of Clergy living in common, and open'd a School for the training up of Youth

in Virtue and Learning. Here our *Thomas* was kindly received by *Florentinus*, who was then President of that House, and by his Help, and that of the other holy Brethren, living there in common, for the Space of about seven Years made great Progress in human Literature, but much greater in the Fear and Love of God, which is *the Science of the Saints*. At the End of this Time, finding in himself a Call to a stricter Retirement, and to the consecrating himself wholly to God in a religious State, he repaired to a Monastery of the Canon-regulars of the Order of *St. Augustine*, lately founded at *Mount St. Agnes*, near the Town of *Swollen*, of which his Brother *John* was then Prior. Here, after six Years Noviceship, as was then usual at that Place, he made his Profession; and here he lived for above 70 Years a perfect Pattern of all Virtues. His whole Discourse was of God, and of his heavenly Truths contained in the
Holy

Holy Scripture : To all other Things he seemed utterly a Stranger ; and would be entirely silent when any one in his Company offer'd to talk of 'em. He was always the first in Choir, and performed the canonical Hours of the Divine Office with his Body erect, his Heart and Eyes so fixt on Heaven, as if he seemed to be just ready to take his Flight to those sacred Mansions above. He waged a perpetual War with Idleness ; and was ever either praying, reading, or writing, or employed in some Work for the common Good : And in such Exercises as these he most frequently employed the whole Time, from the Midnight-Office, till the Morning. He preached often, and with that Unction and Fervor, as drew many from all Parts to hear him. His Conversation was so instructive and edifying, that no one ever came to him that did not find himself improved by his Discourse. He had a particular Talent in com-
A 3 fortifying

forting the Afflicted, and those that were under Temptations. His Love of Solitude, and of Books of Piety, was such, as to have often in his Mouth this Sentence, which he also used to write as his Motto upon his Books: *I have sought for Rest in all Things, but could find it no-where, but in Corners and in Books.* It often happened to him, when he was in Company, to feel an inward Invitation to a private Conversation with God; upon which Occasions he would modestly beg leave to retire, saying, that one wanted him in his Cell. He was twice Sub-prior of the House, and once Procurator or Steward; but this latter Kind of Office being less agreeable with his Inclinations to Solitude and Recollection, he obtained to be discharged from it. He passed from this Life to a better, on the twenty-fifth of July 1471, in the ninety-second Year of his Age, His Works have been published in *Latin*, in three Tomes, at *Antwerp*,
Anno

Anno 1615, and at Doway, Anno 1635. In the first Tome, are contained *thirty Sermons to the Novices, and forty-five Sermons to the Religious*. In the second Tome, are the *four Books of the Following of CHRIST, the Soliloquy of the Soul*, and many other devout Tracts. In the third Tome are contained, *the Life of the Blessed Virgin Lidewiges; the Lives of Gerardus Magnus, of Florentius his Successor, and of their Disciples*.

As for these Books of the *Following of CHRIST*, 'tis needless to offer any Thing by Way of *Elogium*, or Commendation of them: They have been already for these two hundred Years and upwards in the Hands of all the World, translated into almost all Languages, and received with universal Applause by People of all Denominations. In this new Translation we have used our best Endeavours to present our Author to the *English* Reader in his *native Simplicity*, which speaks

viii *The* LIFE of, &c.

more powerfully to the Heart, than the most elaborate Compositions of human Eloquence : And we have been faithful to a Nicety in rendering everywhere what we judged to be his true Meaning, without adding or retrenching any thing. We shall add nothing more, but that 'tis our hearty Prayer that the same Spirit, which directed our Author in the Composition of this heavenly Book, would direct both us and our Readers to understand and put in Execution its excellent Precepts. *Amen.*



T H E

T H E
T A B L E.

B O O K I.

Chap. i.	<i>Of following Christ and despising all the Vanities of the World.</i>	Page 1
Chap. ii.	<i>Of having an humble Sentiment of one's self.</i>	3
Chap. iii.	<i>Of the Doctrin of Truth.</i>	5
Chap. iv.	<i>Of Prudence in our Doings.</i>	8
Chap. v.	<i>Of the reading the Holy Scriptures.</i>	9
Chap. vi.	<i>Of inordinate Affections.</i>	10
Chap. vii.	<i>Of flying vain Hope and Pride.</i>	11
Chap. viii.	<i>Of shunning too much Familiarity.</i>	12
Chap. ix.	<i>Of Obedience and Subjection.</i>	13
Chap. x.	<i>Of avoiding Superfluity of Words.</i>	14
Chap. xi.	<i>Of acquiring Peace, and Zeal of spiritual Progress.</i>	15
Chap. xii.	<i>Of the Advantage of Adversity.</i>	17
Chap. xiii.	<i>Of resisting Temptations.</i>	18
Chap. xiv.	<i>Of avoiding rash Judgment.</i>	22
Chap. xv.	<i>Of Works done out of Charity.</i>	23
Chap. xvi.	<i>Of bearing the Defects of others.</i>	24
Chap. xvii.	<i>Of a Monastical Life.</i>	26
Chap. xviii.	<i>Of the Examples of the Holy Fathers.</i>	27
	A 5	Chap.

The T A B L E,

Chap. xix. <i>Of the Exercises of a good religious Man,</i>	29
Chap. xx. <i>Of the Love of Solitude and Silence.</i>	33
Chap. xxi. <i>Of Compunction of Heart.</i>	37
Chap. xxii. <i>Of the Consideration of the Misery of Man.</i>	39
Chap. xxiii. <i>Of the Thought of Death.</i>	43
Chap. xxiv. <i>Of Judgment and the Punishments of Sins.</i>	47
Chap. xxv. <i>Of the fervent Amendment of our whole Life.</i>	51

B O O K II.

Chap. i. <i>Of Interior Conversation</i>	57
Chap. ii. <i>Of humble Submission.</i>	61
Chap. iii. <i>Of a good peaceable Man.</i>	62
Chap. iv. <i>Of a pure Mind and simple Intention.</i>	64
Chap. v. <i>Of the Consideration of one's self.</i>	65
Chap. vi. <i>Of the Joy of a good Conscience.</i>	66
Chap. vii. <i>Of the Love of JESUS above all Things.</i>	68
Chap. viii. <i>Of familiar Friendship with JESUS.</i>	70
Chap. ix. <i>Of the Want of all Comfort.</i>	72
Chap. x. <i>Of Gratitude for the Grace of God.</i>	76
Chap. xi. <i>Of the small Number of the Lovers of the Cross of JESUS.</i>	79
Chap.	

The T A B L E.

Chap. xii. <i>Of the King's Highway of the Holy Crofs.</i>	81
--	----

B O O K III.

Chap. i. <i>OF the Internal Speech of CHRIST to a faithful Soul.</i>	89
Chap. ii. <i>That Truth speaks within us without Noise of Words.</i>	90
Chap. iii. <i>That the Words of GOD are to be heard with Humility, and that many weigh them not,</i>	92
<i>A Prayer to implore the Grace of Devotion.</i>	94
Chap. iv. <i>That we ought to walk in Truth and Humility in GOD's Presence.</i>	95
Chap. v. <i>Of the wonderful Effect of his Divine Love.</i>	97
Chap. vi. <i>Of the Proof of a true Lover.</i>	101
Chap. vii. <i>That Grace is to be hid under the Guardianship of Humility.</i>	103
Chap. viii. <i>Of the mean Esteem of one's self in the Sight of GOD,</i>	107
Chap. ix. <i>That all Things are to be referred to GOD, as to our last End.</i>	108
Chap. x. <i>That it is sweet to serve GOD, despising this World.</i>	110
Chap. xi. <i>That the Desires of our Heart are to be examined and moderated,</i>	112
Chap. xii. <i>Of learning Patience, and of fighting against Concupiscence.</i>	114
Chap. xiii. <i>Of the Obedience of an humble Subject after the Example of JESUS CHRIST.</i>	116

The T A B L E.

- Chap. xiv. *Of considering the secret Judgments of GOD, lest we be pufft up by our Good-works.* 118
- Chap. xv. *How we are to be disposed and what we are to say when we desire any Thing.* 120
- A Prayer for the fulfilling the Will of GOD.* 121
- Chap. xvi. *That true Comfort is to be sought in GOD alone.* 122
- Chap. xvii. *That we ought to cast all our Care upon GOD.* 123
- Chap. xviii. *That temporal Miseries are to be borne with Patience after the Example of JESUS CHRIST.* 125
- Chap. xix. *Of supporting Injuries; and who is proved to be truly patient.* 126
- Chap. xx. *Of the Confession of our own Infir- mity, and of the Miseries of this Life.* 128
- Chap. xxi. *That we are to rest in GOD above all Goods and Gifts.* 131
- Chap. xxii. *Of the Remembrance of the ma- nifold Benefits of GOD.* 134
- Chap. xxiii. *Of four Things which bring much Peace.* 137
- A Prayer against evil Thoughts.* 138
- A Prayer for the enlightning of the Mind.* 138
- Chap. xxiv. *That we are not to be curious in enquiring into the Life of others.* 139
- Chap. xxv. *In what Things the firm Peace of the Heart and true Progress doth consist.* 140
- Chap. xxvi. *Of the Eminence of a free Mind, which*

The T A B L E.

	<i>which humble Prayer better procures than Reading.</i>	142
	Chap. xxvii. <i>That Self-love chiefly keeps a Person back from the Sovereign Good.</i>	144
	<i>A Prayer for the cleansing of the Heart, and the obtaining of heavenly Wisdom.</i>	145
	Chap. xxviii. <i>Against the Tongues of Detractors.</i>	146
	Chap. xxix. <i>How in the Time of Tribulation GOD is to be invoked and blessed.</i>	147
	Chap. xxx. <i>Of asking the Divine Assistance, and of Confidence of recovering Grace.</i>	148
	Chap. xxxi. <i>Of disregarding all Things created, that so we may find the Creator.</i>	151
	Chap. xxxii. <i>Of the denying ourselves, and renouncing all Cupidity.</i>	154
	Chap. xxxiii. <i>Of the Inconstancy of our Heart, and of directing our Intention to GOD.</i>	156
	Chap. xxxiv. <i>That he that loves GOD relishes him above all Things, and in all Things.</i>	157
	Chap. xxxv. <i>That there is no being secure from Temptation in this Life.</i>	159
	Chap. xxxvi. <i>Against the vain Judgments of Men.</i>	161
	Chap. xxxvii. <i>Of a pure and full Resignation of ourselves, for the obtaining Freedom of Heart.</i>	162
	Chap. xxxviii. <i>Of the good Government of ourselves in outward Things, and of having recourse to GOD in Dangers.</i>	164
	Chap.	

The T A B L E.

- Chap. xxxix. *That a Man must not be over
eager in his Affairs.* 165
- Chap. xl. *That Man hath no Good of himself,
and that he cannot glory in any Thing.* 166
- Chap. xli. *Of the Contempt of all temporal
Honour.* 169
- Chap. xlii. *That our Peace is not to be placed
in Men.* 170
- Chap. xliii. *Against vain and worldly Learn-
ing.* 171
- Chap. xliv. *Of not drawing to ourselves ex-
terior Things.* 173
- Chap. xlv. *That Credit is not to be given to
all Men; and that Men are prone to offend
in Words.* 174
- Chap. xlvi. *Of having Confidence in GOD,
when Words arise against us.* 177
- Chap. xlvii. *That all grievous Things are to
be endured for Life everlasting.* 180
- Chap. xlviii. *Of the Day of Eternity, and of
the Miseries of this Life.* 182
- Chap. xlix. *Of the Desire of eternal Life:
And how great Things are promised to them
that fight.* 185
- Chap. l. *How a desolate Person ought to offer
himself into the Hands of GOD.* 190
- Chap. li. *That we must practice ourselves in
humble Works, when we cannot attain to
high Things.* 194
- Chap. lii. *That a Man ought not to esteem
himself*

The T A B L E.

<i>himself worthy of Consolation, but rather guilty of Stripes.</i>	195
Chap. liii. <i>That the Grace of GOD is not com- municated to the Earthly-minded.</i>	197
Chap. liv. <i>Of the different Motions of Na- ture and Grace.</i>	199
Chap. lv. <i>Of the Corruption of Nature, and of the Efficacy of Divine Grace.</i>	204
Chap. lvi. <i>That we ought to deny ourselves, and to imitate CHRIST by the Cross.</i>	208
Chap. lvii. <i>That a Man should not be too much dejected when he falls into some Defects.</i>	210
Chap. lviii. <i>Of not searching into high Matters, nor into the secret Judgments of GOD.</i>	212
Chap. lix. <i>That all Hope and Confidence is to be fixed in GOD alons.</i>	218

B O O K IV.

Chap. i. W ITH how great Reverence CHRIST is to be received.	221
Chap. ii. <i>That the great Goodness and Charity of GOD is shewed to Man in this Sacrament.</i>	228
Chap. iii. <i>That it is profitable to communicate often.</i>	232.
Chap. iv. <i>That many Benefits are bestowed on them who communicate devoutly.</i>	235
Chap. v. <i>Of the Dignity of the Sacrament, and of the Priestly State.</i>	238
Chap. vi. <i>A Petition concerning the Exercise proper before Communion,</i>	241
Chap.	

The T A B L E.

- Chap. vii. *Of the Discussion of one's own Conscience, and of a Resolution of Amendment.* 241
- Chap. viii. *Of the Oblation of CHRIST on the Cross, and of the Resignation of ourselves.* 244
- Chap. ix. *That we must offer ourselves, and all that is ours, to GOD, and pray for all.* 245
- Chap. x. *That the Holy Communion is not lightly to be forborne.* 248
- Chap. xi. *That the Body of CHRIST and the Holy Scripture are most necessary to a faithful Soul.* 252
- Chap. xii. *That he who is to communicate ought to prepare himself for CHRIST with great Diligence.* 257
- Chap. xiii. *That a devout Soul ought to desire with her whole Heart to be united to CHRIST in the Sacrament.* 259
- Chap. xiv. *Of the ardent Desire of some devout Persons to receive the Body of CHRIST.* 261
- Chap. xv. *That the Grace of Devotion is obtained by Humility and Self-denial.* 263
- Chap. xvi. *That we ought to lay open our Necessities to CHRIST, and crave his Grace.* 265
- Chap. xvii. *Of fervent Love and vehement Desire to receive CHRIST.* 267
- Chap. xviii. *That a Man be not a curious Searcher into this Sacrament, but an humble Follower of CHRIST, submitting his Sense to Holy Faith.* 270

Con-
241
a the
244
d all
245
not
248
l the
ith-
252
cate
with
257
fire
to
259
out
61
ob-
63
ef-
65
ent
67
ch-
ol-
to
70
E

T H E

Following of CHRIST.

B O O K I.

C H A P. I.

*Of following CHRIST, and despising all the
Vanities of the WORLD.*

H*E that followeth me walketh not in Dark-
ness, saith our LORD, John viii. 12.*

These are the Words of CHRIST,
by which we are admonish'd that we must
imitate his Life and Manners, if we would
be truly enlighten'd, and deliver'd from all
Blindness of Heart. Let it be then our chief
Study to meditate on the Life of JESUS
CHRIST.

2. The Doctrine of CHRIST surpasseth all
the Doctrines of the Saints : And whosoever
hath the Spirit will find therein a hidden
Manna. But it falls out that many by fre-
quent hearing the Gospel are very little af-
fected, because they have not the Spirit of
CHRIST. But he that would fully and feel-
ingly understand the Words of CHRIST, must
study

study to make his whole Life conformable to that of CHRIST.

3. What does it avail thee to discourse profoundly of the Trinity, if thou be void of Humility, and consequently displeasing to the Trinity? In truth, sublime Words make not a Man holy, and just, but a virtuous Life maketh him dear to GOD. I had rather feel Compunction, than know its Definition. If thou didst know the whole Bible by heart, and the Sayings of all the Philosophers, what would it all profit thee without the Love of GOD and his Grace? *Vanity of Vanities, and all is Vanity*, besides loving GOD and serving him alone. This is the highest Wisdom; by despising the World, to tend to Heavenly Kingdoms.

4. 'Tis Vanity therefore to seek after Riches which must perish, and to trust in them. 'Tis Vanity also to be ambitious of Honours, and to raise one's self to a high Station. 'Tis Vanity to follow the Lusts of the Flesh, and to desire that for which thou must afterwards be grievously punish'd. 'Tis Vanity to wish for a long Life, and to take little Care of a good Life. 'Tis Vanity to mind only this present Life, and not to look forward into those Things which are to come. 'Tis Vanity to love that which passeth with all Speed, and not to hasten thither where everlasting Joy remains.

5. Often

5. Often remember that Proverb, *The Eye is not satisfied with seeing, nor is the Ear fill'd with hearing*, Ecclef. i. 8. Study therefore to withdraw thy Heart from the Love of visible Things, and to turn thyself to Things invisible. For they that follow their Sensuality defile their Conscience, and lose GOD's Grace.

C H A P. II.

Of having an humble SENTIMENT of one's self.

I. **A** L L Men naturally desire to know ; but what does Knowledge avail without the Fear of GOD ? Indeed an humble Husbandman that serves GOD is better than a proud Philosopher who neglecting himself considers the Course of the Heavens. He who knows himself well is mean in his own Eyes, and is not delighted with being prais'd by Men. If I should know all Things that are in the World, and should not be in Charity, what Help would it be to me in the Sight of GOD, who will judge me by my Deeds?

2. Leave off that excessive Desire of knowing ; because there is found therein much Distraction and Deceit. They that are learned are willing to appear and to be called wise, There are many things, the Knowledge of which is of little or no Profit to the Soul. And he is very unwise who attends to other things than what may serve to his Salvation. Many Words

Words don't satisfy the Soul; but a good Life gives Ease to the Mind, and a pure Conscience affords a great Confidence in God.

3. The more and better thou knowest, the more heavy will be thy Judgment, unless thy Life be also more holy. Be not therefore puff'd up with any Art or Science, but rather fear upon Account of the Knowledge which is given thee. If it seems to thee that thou knowest many things, and understandest them well enough; know at the same time that there are many more things, of which thou art ignorant. *Be not high minded*, but rather own thy Ignorance. Why would'st thou prefer thyself to any one, since there are many more learned and skilful in the Law than thyself? If thou would'st know and learn any thing to the Purpose, love to be unknown and esteem'd as nothing.

4. This is the highest and most profitable Lesson, truly to know, and to despise ourselves. To have no Opinion of ourselves, and to think always well and commendably of others, is a great Wisdom and high Perfection. If thou should'st see another openly sin, or commit some heinous Crime, yet thou ought'st not to esteem thyself better, because thou knowest not how long thou may'st remain in a good State. We are all frail: But see thou esteem no one more frail than thyself.

C H A P.

1. **H**APPY is he whom *Truth* teacheth by itself, not by Figures and Words that pass, but as it is in itself. Our Opinion and our Sense often deceive us, and discover but little. What signifies making a great Dispute about abstruse and obscure Matters, for not knowing of which we shall not be question'd in the Day of Judgment. 'Tis a great Folly for us to neglect things profitable and necessary, and willingly to busy ourselves about those which are curious and hurtful. We have Eyes and see not.

2. And what need we concern ourselves about Questions of Philosophy. He to whom the *Eternal Word* speaketh is set at Liberty from a Multitude of Opinions. From *one Word* are all things, and this *one* all things speak; and this is *the Beginning which also speaks to us*, St. *John* viii. 25. Without this *Word* no one understands, or judges rightly. He to whom all things are *one*, and who draws all things to *one*, and who sees all things in *one*, may be steady in Heart, and peaceably repose in God. O *Truth my God*, make me *one* with thee in everlasting Love. I am wearied with often reading and hearing many things: In thee is *all* that I will or desire. Let all Teachers hold their Peace; let all Creatures

tures be silent in thy Sight: Speak thou to me alone.

3. The more a Man is united within himself, and interiorly simple, the more and higher things doth he understand without Labour; because he receives the Light of Understanding from Above. A pure, simple and steady Spirit is not dissipated by a Multitude of Affairs, because he performs them all to the Honour of GOD, and endeavours to be at rest within himself from all seeking of himself. Who is a greater Hindrance and Trouble to thee, than thy own unmortified Affection of Heart? A good and devout Man first disposes his Works inwardly, which he is to do outwardly: Neither do they draw him to the Desires of an inordinate Inclination, but he bends them to the Rule of right Reason. Who has a stronger Conflict than he who strives to overcome himself? And this must be our Business, *viz.* to overcome ourselves, and daily to gain Strength against ourselves, and to grow better and better.

4. All Perfections in this Life is mixed with some Imperfection, and all our Speculation with a certain Obscurity. The humble Knowledge of thyself is a surer Way to GOD, than the deepest Search after Science. Learning is not to be blamed, nor the mere Knowledge of any thing, which is good in itself,
and

ou to
him-
high-
our;
and-
eady
Af-
Ho-
rest
self.
eto
n of
oses
out-
the
he
Who
ves
our
and
and
red
ti-
ble
D,
n-
w-
elf,
nd

Chap. 3. of CHRIST.

7

and ordain'd by GOD; but a good Conscience and a virtuous Life is always to be preferred before it. But because many make it more their Study to know, than to live well, therefore are they often deceived, and bring forth none, or very little Fruit.

5. Oh! If Men would use as much Diligence in rooting out Vices and planting Virtues, as they do in moving of Questions, there would not be so great Evils committed, nor Scandals among the People, nor so much Relaxation in Monasteries. Verily, when the Day of Judgment comes, we shall not be examin'd what we have read, but what we have done; nor how learnedly we have spoken, but how religiously we have lived? Tell me where are now all those great Doctors, with whom thou wast well acquainted, whilst they were living, and flourished in Learning? Now others possess their Livings, and I know not whether they ever think of them. In their Life-time they seem'd to be something, and now they are not spoken of.

6. Oh! How quickly doth the Glory of the World pass away? Would to GOD their Lives had been answerable to their Learning, then would they have studied and read well. How many perish in the World thro' vain Learning, who take little Care of the Service of GOD? And because they chuse rather to
be

be great than to be humble, therefore they are lost in their own Imaginations. He is truly great who is great in Charity. He is truly great, who is little in his own Eyes, and makes no account of the Heighth of Honour. He is truly prudent, who looks upon all earthly things as Dung, that he may gain CHRIST. And he is very learned indeed, who does the Will of GOD, and renounces his own Will.

C H A P. IV.

Of PRUDENCE in our DOINGS.

1. **W**E must not be easy in giving Credit to every Word or Suggestion, but carefully and leisurely weigh the Matter according to GOD. Alas! such is our Weakness, that we often more readily believe and speak of another that which is Evil, than that which is good. But perfect Men don't easily give Credit to every Report, because they know Man's Weakness, which is very prone to Evil, and very subject to fail in Words.

2. 'Tis great Wisdom not to be rash in our Doings, nor to stand too stiffly in our own Opinion. As also not to believe every Man's Words, nor presently to tell others the things which we have heard or believed. Consult with a wise and conscientious Man, and seek rather to be instructed by one that is better, than to follow thine own Inventions. A good Life makes a Man wise according to GOD,
and

and expert in many things. The more humble a Man is in himself, and more subject to God, the more wise will he be in all things, and the more at peace.

CHAP. V.

Of the reading the HOLY SCRIPTURES.

1. **T**RUTH is to be sought for in holy Scriptures, not Eloquence. All holy Scripture ought to be read with that Spirit with which it was made. We must rather seek for Profit in Scriptures, than for Subtilty of Speech. We ought as willingly to read devout and simple Books, as those that are high and profound. Let not the Authority of the Writer offend thee, whether he was of little or great Learning; but let the Love of pure Truth lead thee to read. Enquire not who said this, but attend to what is said.

2. Men pass away, but *the Truth of the Lord remains for ever*, Ps. xvi. God speaks many ways to us without Respect of Persons. Our Curiosity often hinders us in reading of the Scriptures, when we will understand and discuss that which should simply be passed over. If thou wilt receive Profit, read with Humility, Simplicity and Faith, and seek not at any time to get a Name for Learning. Willingly enquire after and hear with Silence the Words of the Saints; and be pleased with

the Parables of the Ancients, for they are not spoken without Cause.

C H A P. VI.

Of inordinate AFFECTIONS.

I. **W**HENSOEVER a Man desires any thing inordinately, he is presently disquieted in himself. The Proud and Covetous are never easy: The Poor and humble in Spirit live in much Peace. The Man, that is not yet perfectly dead to himself, is soon tempted and overcome with small and trifling things. He that is weak in Spirit, and in a manner yet carnal and inclined to sensible things, can hardly withdraw himself wholly from earthly Desires; and therefore he is often sad, when he withdraws himself from them, and is easily moved to Anger if any one thwarts him.

2. And if he has pursued his Inclination, he is presently loaded with the Guilt of his Conscience; because he has followed his Passion, which helps him not at all towards the Peace he sought for. 'Tis then by resisting our Passions, that we are to find the true Peace of Heart, and not by being Slaves to them. There is no Peace therefore in the Heart of a carnal Man, nor in a Man that is addicted to outward things, but only in a fervent spiritual Man.

C H A P.

Of flying vain HOPE and PRIDE.

1. **H**E is vain who puts his Trust in Men or in Creatures. Be not ashamed to serve others for the Love of JESUS CHRIST; and to appear poor in this World. Stand not upon thyself, but place thy Hope in GOD. Do what is in thee, and GOD will be with thy Goodwill. Trust not in thy Knowledge, nor in the Cunning of any Man living; but rather in the Grace of GOD, who helps the Humble, and humbles those who presume of themselves.

2. Glory not in Riches, if thou hast them; nor in Friends because they are powerful; but in GOD, who gives all things, and desires to give himself above all things. Boast not of the Stature or Beauty of the Body, which is spoiled and disfigured by a little Sickness. Please not thyself in thy Sharpness or Wit, lest thou displease GOD, to whom appertaineth all whatever Good thou naturally hast.

3. Esteem not thyself better than others, lest perhaps thou be accounted worse in the Sight of GOD, who knows what is in Man. Be not proud of thy good Works; for the Judgments of GOD are different from the Judgments of Men; and oftentimes that displeaseth him which pleaseth Men. If thou hast anything of Good, believe better things of others, that thou may'st preserve Humility.

It will do thee no harm to esteem thyself the worst of all : But it will hurt thee very much to prefer thyself before any one, Continual Peace is with the Humble : But in the Heart of the Proud is frequent Envy and Indignation.

C H A P. VIII.

Of shunning too much FAMILIARITY.

1. **D**ISCOVER *not thy Heart to every Man*, Eccles. viii. But treat thy Affairs with a Man that is wise and feareth God, Keep not much Company with young People and Strangers. Be not a Flatterer with the Rich, nor willingly appear before the Great. Associate thyself with the Humble and Simple, with the Devout and Virtuous, and treat of those things which may be to Edification. Be not familiar with any Woman, but recommend all good Women in general to God. Desire to be familiar with God alone and his Angels, and fly the Acquaintance of Men.

2. We must have the Love of Charity for all, but Familiarity is not expedient. It falls out sometimes that a Person, when not known, shines by a good Reputation; who when he is present is disagreeable to them that see him. We think sometimes to please others by being with them, and we begin rather to disgust them, by the evil Behaviour which they discover in us.

C H A P.

Of Obedience and SUBJECTION.

1. 'T IS a very great thing to stand in Obedience, to live under a Superior, and not to be at our own Disposal. 'Tis much securer to be in the State of Subjection, than in Authority. Many are under Obedience more out of necessity, than for the Love of GOD, and such as these are in Pain, and easily repine: Nor will they gain Freedom of Mind, unless they submit themselves with their whole Heart for GOD's Sake. Run here or there, thou shalt find no Rest, but in an humble Subjection under the Government of a Superior. The Imagination and changing of Places has deceived many.

2. It is true, every one willingly is for doing according to his own liking, and is more inclined to such as are of his own Mind: But if GOD be amongst us, we must sometimes quit our own Way of thinking for the Good of Peace. Who is so wise, as to be able fully to know all things? Therefore trust not too much to thy own Thoughts, but be willing also to hear the Sentiments of others. If thy Thinking be good, and yet for GOD's Sake thou leavest it, to follow another, it will be more profitable to thee.

3. For I have often heard, that it is more safe to hear and take counsel, than to give it.

It may also happen, that each one's Thought may be good : But to refuse to yield to others, when Reason or a just Cause requires it, is a sign of Pride and Wilfulness.

C H A P. X.

Of avoiding Superfluity of WORDS.

1. **F**LY the Tumult of Men as much as thou can'st, for treating of worldly Affairs hinders very much, altho' they be discoursed of with a simple Intention. For we are quickly defiled and ensnared with Vanity. I could wish I had often been silent, and that I had not been in Company. But why are we so willing to talk and discourse with one another, since we seldom return to Silence without Prejudice to our Conscience? The Reason why we are so willing to talk is, because by discoursing together we seek Comfort from one another, and would gladly ease the Heart, wearied with various Thoughts. And we very willingly talk and think of such Things as we most love and desire, or which we imagine contrary to us.

2. But, Alas! 'tis often in vain and to no purpose; for this outward Consolation is no small Hindrance of interior and divine Comfort. Therefore we must watch and pray, that our Time may not pass away without Fruit. If it be lawful and expedient to speak, speak
those

ok I.
ought
thers,
t, is a

ch as
rldly
ey be
or we
nity.
that
y are
one
ence
The
be-
fort
e the
And
such
nich

o no
s no
om-
hat
uit.
eak
ose

Chap. II. of CHRIST 15

those things which may edify. A bad Custom and the Neglect of our spiritual Advancement is a great Cause of our keeping so little guard upon our Mouth. But devout Conferences concerning spiritual Things help very much to spiritual Progress; especially where Persons of the same Mind and Spirit are associated together in GOD.

C H A P. XI

Of acquiring PEACE, and Zeal of spiritual PROGRESS.

I. **W**E might have much Peace, if we would not busy ourselves with the Sayings and Doings of others, and with Things which belong not to us. How can he remain long in Peace, who entangles himself with other People's Cares; who seeks Occasions abroad, and who is little or seldom inwardly recollected? Blessed are the single-hearted, for they shall enjoy much Peace.

2. What was the Reason why some of the Saints were so perfect and contemplative? Because they made it their Study wholly to mortify themselves from all earthly Desires, and thus they were enabled with the whole Interior of their Heart to cleave to GOD, and freely to attend to themselves. We are too much taken up with our own Passions, and too solicitous about transitory Things. And seldom

seldom do we perfectly overcome so much as one Vice, nor are we earnestly bent upon our daily Progress ; and therefore we remain cold and tepid.

3. If we were perfectly dead to ourselves, and no ways entangled in our Interiors, then might we be able to relish things Divine, and experience something of heavenly Contemplation. The whole and greatest Hindrance is because we are not free from Passions and Lust, nor do we strive to walk in the perfect way of the Saints. And when we meet with any small Adversity, we are too quickly dejected and turn away to seek after human Consolations.

4. If we strove like valiant Men to stand in the Battle, doubtless we should see that our LORD would help us from Heaven ; for he is ready to help them that fight, and trust in his Grace ; who procures us Occasions of fighting that we may overcome. If we place our Progress in Religion only in these outward Observances, our Devotion will quickly be at an end. But let us lay the Axe to the Root, that being purged from Passions we may possess a quiet Mind.

5. If every Year we rooted out one Vice, we should soon become perfect Men ; but now we often find it quite otherwise ; that we were better and more pure in the Beginning
of

of our Conversion, than after many Years of our Profession. Our Fervour and Progress ought to be every Day greater ; but now 'tis esteem'd a great matter if a Man can retain some Part of his first Fervour. If we would use but a little Violence upon ourselves in the Beginning, we might afterwards do all things with Ease and Joy.

6. 'Tis hard to leave off our old Customs, and harder to go against our own Will ; But if thou dost not overcome Things that are small and light, when wilt thou overcome greater Difficulties ? Resist thy Inclination in the beginning, and break off the evil Habit, lest perhaps by little and little the Difficulty increase upon thee. Oh ! if thou wert sensible how much Peace thou shouldst procure to thyself, and Joy to others, by behaving thyself well, thou wouldst be more solicitous for thy spiritual Progress.

C H A P XII.

Of the Advantage of ADVERSITY.

I. 'TIS good for us to have sometimes Troubles and Adversities, for they make a Man enter into himself, that he may know that he is in a State of Banishment, and may not place his Hope in any thing of this World. 'Tis good that we suffer sometimes Contradictions, and that Men have an evil or imperfect

imperfect Opinion of us, ever when we do and intend well. These things are often Helps to Humility, and defend us from Vain-glory; for then we better run to GOD our inward Witness, when outwardly we are despised by Men, and little Credit is given to us.

2. Therefore should a Man establish himself in such Manner in GOD, as to have no need of seeking many Comforts from Men. When a *Man of Good-will* is troubled or tempted, or afflicted with evil Thoughts, then he better understands what need he hath of GOD, without whom he finds he can do no Good. Then also he laments, he sighs, he prays by reason of the Miseries which he suffers; then is he weary of living longer, and wishes Death to come, that he may be *dis-solv'd and be with CHRIST*, *Phil. i.* Then also he well perceives that perfect Security and full Peace cannot be had in this World.

C H A P. XIII.

Of resisting TEMPTATIONS.

1. **A**S long as we live in this World we cannot be without Tribulation and Temptation. Hence it is written in *Job vii.* *Man's Life upon Earth is a Temptation.* Therefore every one ought to be solicitous about his Temptations, and to watch in Prayers, lest the Devil find room to deceive him; who never sleeps, but goes about seeking whom he may devour,

I. Chap. 13. of CHRIST.

19

devour, 1 Peter, v. No Man is so perfect and holy as not to have sometimes Temptations, and we cannot be wholly without them.

2. Temptations are often very profitable to a Man, altho' they be troublesome and grievous; for in them a Man is humbled, purified, and instructed. All the Saints have passed thro' many Tribulations and Temptations, and have profited by them; and they who could not support Temptations have become Reprobates, and fell off. There is not any Order so holy, nor Place so retir'd, where there are not Temptations or Adversities.

3. A Man is never entirely secure from Temptations as long as he lives; because we have within us the Source of Temptations, having been born in Concupiscence. When one Temptation or Tribulation is over, another comes on, and we shall have always something to suffer, because we have lost the Good of our original Happiness. Many seek to fly Temptations, and fall more grievously into them. By Flight alone we cannot overcome; but by Patience and true Humility we are made stronger than all our Enemies. He who only declines them outwardly, and does not pluck up the Root, will profit little: Nay, Temptations will sooner return to him, and he shall find himself in worse Condition. By Degrees and by Patience with Longanimity,
thou

thou shalt, by GOD's Grace better overcome them, than by Harshness and thine own Impertunity. In Temptation often take counsel, and deal not roughly with one that is tempted; but comfort him, as thou would'st wish to be done to thyself.

4. The Beginning of all evil Temptations is an Inconstancy of Mind, and small Confidence in GOD. For as a Ship without a Rudder is tossed too and fro by the Waves, so the Man that is remiss, and that quits his Resolution, is many ways tempted. Fire tries Iron, and Temptation tries a just Man. We often know not what we can do, but Temptation discovers what we are. However, we must be watchful, especially in the Beginning of Temptation; because then the Enemy is easier overcome, if he is not suffer'd to come in at all at the Door of the Soul, but is kept out, and resisted at his first Knock. Whence a certain Man said, *Withstand the Beginnings. After-Remedies come too late.* For first a bare Thought comes to the Mind, then a strong Imagination; afterwards Delight, and evil Motion and Consent. And thus by little and little the wicked Enemy gets full Entrance, when he is not resisted in the Beginning. And how much the longer one is negligent in resisting, so much the weaker does he daily become in himself, and the Enemy stronger against him.

5. Some

Chap.

5. S
Beginn
the En
trouble
Some a
the W
GOD,
Men,
of his

6.
we are
much
safe to
doubt,
1 Cor
tation,
theref
of Go
forthe

7.
Man
and in
tue b
be d
Trou
bears
of a g
from
come
bled,

5. Some suffer greater Temptations in the Beginning of their Conversion and some in the End: And some there are that are much troubled in a manner all their Life-time. Some are but lightly tempted, according to the Wisdom and Equity of the Ordinance of GOD, who weighs the State and Merits of Men, and pre-ordains all for the Salvation of his Elect.

6. We must not therefore despair when we are tempted, but pray to GOD with so much the more Fervour, that he may vouchsafe to help us in all Tribulations; who, no doubt, according to the Saying of St. Paul, *1 Cor. x. will make such Issue with the Temptation, that we may be able to sustain it.* Let us therefore humble our Souls under the Hand of GOD in all Temptations and Tribulations; for the humble in Spirit he will save and exalt.

7. In Temptations and Tribulations a Man is proved what Progress he has made; and in them there is greater Merit, and Virtue better appears. Nor is it much if a Man be devout and fervent when he feels no Trouble; but if in the Time of Adversity he bears up with Patience; there will be Hope of a great Advancement. Some are preserved from great Temptations, and are often overcome in little daily ones; that being humbled, they may never presume of themselves

in great things, who are weak in such small Occurrences.

C H A P. XIV.

Of avoiding Rash JUDGMENT.

1. **T**URN thy Eyes back upon thyself, and see thou judge not the Doings of others. In judging others a Man labours in vain, often errs, and easily sins; but in judging and looking into himself he always labours with Fruit. We frequently judge of a Thing according as we have it at heart; for we easily lose true Judgment thro' private Affection. If GOD were always the pure Intention of our Desire, we should not so easily be disturbed at the Resistance of our Opinion.

2. But there is often something lies hid within, or concurs from without, which draws us all along with it. Many secretly seek themselves in what they do, and are not sensible of it. They seem also to stand in good Peace, when things are done according to their Will and Judgment; but if it fall out contrary to their Desires, they are soon moved and become sad. Difference of Thoughts and Opinions is frequently enough the Source of Dissentions amongst religious and devout Persons.

3. An old Custom is with Difficulty relinquish'd; and no Man is led willingly farther than himself seeks or likes. If thou relieft
more

more upon thy own Reason or Industry than upon the Virtue that subjects to JESUS CHRIST, thou shalt seldom and hardly be an *illuminated* Man; for GOD will have us perfectly subject to himself, and to transcend all Reason by inflamed Love.

C H A P. XV.

Of Works done out of CHARITY.

1. **F**OR nothing in the World, and for no Man's Love is any Evil to be done; but for the Profit of one that stands in need, a good Work is sometimes freely to be omitted, or rather to be changed for a better; for by doing thus, a good Work is not lost, but is changed into a better. Without Charity the outward Work profiteth nothing: But whatever is done out of Charity, be it never so little and contemptible, all becomes fruitful; for GOD regards more with how much Affection and Love a Person performs a Work, than how much he does.

2. He does much that loves much. He does much that does well what he does. He does well that regards rather the common Good than his own Will. That seems often to be Charity, which is rather Carnality: Because our own natural Inclination, Self-will, Hope of Retribution, Desire of our own Interest, will seldom be wanting.

3. He that has true and perfect Charity

C 2

seeks

seeks himself in no one thing, but desires only the Glory of God in all things. He envies no Man, because he loves no private Joy; nor does he desire to rejoice in himself; but, above all good things, he wishes to be made happy in God. He attributes nothing of Good to any Man, but refers it totally to God, from whom all things proceed as from their Fountain, in the Enjoyment of whom all the Saints repose as in their last End. Ah! If a Man had but one Spark of perfect Charity, he would doubtless perceive that all earthly things are full of Vanity.

C H A P. XVI.

Of bearing the DEFECTS of others.

1. **W**HAT a Man cannot mend in himself or others he must bear with Patience, 'till God ordain otherwise. Think that perhaps 'tis better so for thy Trial and Patience, without which our Merits are little worth. Thou must nevertheless, under such Impediments, earnestly pray that God may vouchsafe to help thee, and that thou may'st bear them well.

2. If any one being once or twice admonished does not comply, contend not with him; but commit all to God, that his Will may be done, and he may be honoured in all his Servants, who knows how to convert Evil into Good. Endeavour to be patient in supporting

supporting others Defects and Infirmities, of what Kind soever; because thou also hast many things which others must bear withal. If thou canst not make thyself such a one as thou wouldst, how canst thou expect to have another according to thy likeing? We would willingly have others perfect, and yet we mend not our own Defects.

3. We would have others strictly corrected, but are not willing to be corrected ourselves. The large Liberty of others displeases us, and yet we would not be denied any thing that we ask for. We are willing that others should be bound up by Laws, and we suffer not ourselves by any Means to be restrained. Thus it is evident how seldom we weigh our Neighbour in the same Balance with ourselves. If all were perfect, what should we have then to suffer from others for GOD's Sake.

4. But now GOD has so disposed things that we may learn to bear one another's Burdens: For there is no Man without Defect; no Man without Burden; no Man sufficient for himself; no Man wise enough for himself: But we must support one another, comfort one another, assist, instruct, and admonish one another. But how great each one's Virtue is, best appears by occasion of Adversity; for Occasions don't make a Man frail, but shew what he is.

1. **T**HOU must learn to break thyself in many things, if thou wilt keep Peace and Concord with others. 'Tis no small Matter to live in a Monastery, or in a Congregation, and to converse therein without Reproof, and to persevere faithful till Death. Blessed is he who has there liv'd well, and made a happy End. If thou wilt stand as thou oughtest, and make a due Progress, look upon thyself as a banish'd Man, and a Stranger upon Earth. Thou must be content to be made a Fool for CHRIST, if thou wilt lead a religious Life.

2. The Habit and the Tonsure contribute little; but the Change of Manners, and entire Mortification of the Passions make a true religious Man. He that seeks here any other thing than purely GOD and the Salvation of his Soul, shall find nothing but Trouble and Sorrow; neither can he long remain in Peace, who does not strive to be the least, and subject to all.

3. Thou comest hither to serve, not to govern; know that thou art called to suffer and to labour, not to be idle and talkative. Here then Men are tried as Gold in the Furnace: Here no Man can stand, unless he be willing with all his Heart to humble himself for the Love of GOD.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of the EXAMPLES of the Holy Fathers.

1. **L**OOK upon the lively Examples of the Holy Fathers, in whom true Perfection and Religion was most shining, and thou shalt see how little, and almost nothing, that is which we do. Alas ! what is our Life if compared to theirs ? The Saints and Friends of CHRIST served our LORD in Hunger and Thirst, in Cold and Nakedness, in Labour and Weariness, in Watchings and Fastings, in Prayers and holy Meditations, in Persecutions and many Reproaches.

2. Ah ! how many and how grievous Tribulations have the Apostles, Martyrs, Confessors, Virgins, and all the rest gone through, who have been willing to follow CHRIST'S Footsteps ; for they hated their Lives in this World, that they might possess them for Eternity. O ! how strict and mortify'd a Life did the Holy Fathers lead in the Desert ! How long and grievous Temptations did they endure ! How often were they molested by the Enemy ! How frequent and fervent Prayers did they offer to GOD ! What rigorous Abstinences did they go through ! What great Zeal and Fervour had they for their spiritual Progress ! How strong a War did they wage for overcoming Vice ! How pure and upright was their Intention to GOD ! They labour'd

all the Day, and in the Nights they gave themselves to long Prayer; tho' even whilst they were at work they ceas'd not from mental Prayer.

3. They spent all their Time profitably; every Hour seemed short which they spent with GOD: And through the great Sweetness of Divine Contemplation, they forgot even the Necessity of their bodily Refreshment: They renounced all Riches, Dignities, Honours, Friends and Kindred; they desired to have nothing of this World, they scarce allow'd themselves the Necessaries of Life; the serving the Body even in Necessity was irksome to them. They were poor therefore as to earthly Things; but very rich in Grace and Virtues: Outwardly they wanted, but inwardly they were refresh'd with Divine Graces and Consolations.

4. They were Strangers to the World, but near and familiar Friends to GOD: They seem'd to themselves as nothing, and were despised by this World: But in the Eyes of GOD they were very valuable and beloved. They stood in true Humility, they lived in simple Obedience, they walked in Charity and Patience; and therefore they daily advanced in Spirit, and obtained great Favour with GOD. They were given as an Example for all Religious; and ought more to excite us to make good Progress, than the Number of the Lukewarm to grow slack. 5. Oh!

Chap. 19. of CHRIST. 29

5. Oh ! how great was the Fervour of all Religious in the Beginning of their Holy Institution ! Oh ! how great their Devotion in Prayer ! How great their Zeal for Virtue ! How great Discipline was in force amongst them ! How great Reverence and Obedience in all, flourish'd under the Rule of a Superior ! The Footsteps remaining still bear Witness that they were truly perfect and holy Men ; who waging War so stoutly, trod the World under their Feet. Now he is thought great, who is not a Transgressor, and who can with Patience endure what he hath undertaken.

6. Ah ! The Lukewarmness and Negligence of our State, that we so quickly decline from our former Fervour, and are now even weary of living through Sloth and Tepidity ! Would to GOD that Advancement in Virtues were not wholly asleep in thee, who hast often seen many Examples of the Devout.

C H A P. XIX.

Of the EXERCISES of a good religious Man.

I. **T**HE Life of a good religious Man ought to be eminent in all Virtues ; that he may be such interiorly, as he appears to Men in his Exterior. And with good Reason ought he to be much more in his Interior, than he exteriorly appears : Because he that beholds us, is GOD, of whom we ought exceedingly to stand in awe, where-ever we are,

and like Angels walk pure in his Sight. We ought every Day to renew our Resolution, and excite ourselves to Fervour, as if this Day were the first of our Conversion; and to say: Help me, O Lord God, in my good Resolution, and in thy holy Service; and give me Grace now this Day perfectly to begin; for what I have hitherto done is nothing.

2. According as our Resolution is, will the Progress of our Advancement be: And he has need of much Diligence, who would advance much. Now if he that makes a strong Resolution often fails, what will he do who seldom or but weakly resolves? The falling off from our Resolution happens diverse ways: And a small Omission in our Exercises seldom passeth without some Loss. The Resolution of the Just depends on the Grace of God, rather than on their own Wisdom: In whom also they always put their Trust, whatever they take in hand: For Man proposes, but God disposes; nor is the Way of Man in his own Hands.

3. If for Piety's-sake, or, with a Design of the Profit of our Brother we sometimes omit our accustomed Exercise, it may afterwards be easily recovered: But if through a Loathing of Mind, or Negligence, it be lightly let alone, it is no small Fault, and will prove hurtful. Let us endeavour what we can, we shall

We shall still be apt to fail in many Things. But yet we must always resolve on something certain, and in particular against those things which hinder us most : We must examine and order well both our Exterior and Interior, because both conduce to our Advancement.

4. If thou canst not continually recollect thyself, do it sometimes ; and at least once a Day, that is, at Morning, or Evening. In the Morning resolve, in the Evening examine thy Performances ; how thou hast behaved this Day in Word, Work or Thought, because in these perhaps thou hast often offended God and thy Neighbour. Prepare thyself like a Man to resist the wicked Attacks of the Devil ; Bridle Gluttony, and thou shalt the easier restrain all carnal Inclinations. Be never altogether idle ; but either reading or writing, or praying, or meditating, or labouring in something that may be for the common Good. Yet in bodily Exercises, a Discretion is to be used ; nor are they equally to be undertaken by all.

5. Those Things which are not *common* are not to be done in Publick ; for *particular* things are more safely done in Private. But take care thou be not slack in common Exercises, and more forward in things of thy own particular Devotion : But having fully and faithfully performed what thou art bound
to,

to, and what is enjoined thee, if thou hast any Time remaining, give thyself to thyself according as thy Devotion shall incline thee. All cannot have the self-same Exercise; but this is more proper for one, and that for another. Moreover, according to the Diversity of Times, diverse Exercises are more pleasing; for some relish better on Festival Days, others on Common Days. We stand in need of one kind in time of Temptation, and of another in time of Peace and Rest. Some we willingly think on whom we are sad, others when we are joyful in our LORD.

6. About the Time of the principal Festivals, we must renew our good Exercises, and more fervently implore the Prayers of the Saints. We ought to make our Resolution from Festival to Festival, as if we were then to depart out of this World, and to come to the everlasting Festival. Therefore we ought carefully to prepare ourselves at Times of Devotion, and to converse more devoutly, and keep all Observances more strictly, as being shortly to receive the Reward of our Labour from God.

7. And if it be deferred, let us believe that we are not well prepared, and that we are as yet unworthy of that great Glory which shall be revealed in us at the appointed Time: And let us endeavour to prepare ourselves better

better for our Departure. *Blessed is that Servant (says the Evangelist St. Luke, Chap. xii.) whom when his Lord shall come, he shall find watching. Verily, I say unto you, he shall set him over all his Possessions.*

C H A P. XX.

Of the Love of SOLITUDE and SILENCE.

1. **S**EEK a proper Time to retire into thyself, and often think of the Benefits of GOD. Let alone Curiosities; read such Matters as may rather move thee to Compunction, than give thee Occupation. If thou wilt withdraw thyself from superfluous Talk and idle Visits, as also from giving ear to News and Reports, thou wilt find Time sufficient and proper to employ thyself in good Meditations. The greatest Saints avoided the Company of Men as much as they could, and chose to live to GOD in Secret.

2. *As often as I have been amongst Men (said one) I have returned less Man.* Seneca, Epist. 7. This we often experience, when we talk long. 'Tis easier to be altogether silent than not to exceed in Words. 'Tis easier to keep retired at home, than to be able to be sufficiently upon one's guard abroad. Whosoever therefore aims at arriving at *internal* and *spiritual* Things, must with JESUS go aside from the Croud. No Man is secure in appearing abroad, but he who would willingly

ingly lie hid at home. No Man securely speaks, but he who loves to hold his Peace : No Man securely governs, but he who would willingly live in Subjection. No Man securely commands, but he who has learned well to obey.

3. No Man securely rejoiceth unless he have within him the Testimony of a good Conscience. Yet the Security of the Saints was always full of the Fear of God. Neither were they less careful or humble in themselves, because they were shining with great Virtues and Grace. But the Security of the Wicked arises from Pride and Presumption, and will end in the deceiving themselves. Never promise thyself Security in this Life, tho' thou seemest to be a good religious Man, or a devout Hermit.

4. Oftentimes they that were better in the Judgment of Men, have been in greater Danger by reason of their too great Confidence. So that it is better for many not to be altogether free from Temptations, but to be often assaulted ; that they be not too secure, lest perhaps they be lifted up with Pride, or take more Liberty to go aside after exterior Comforts. Oh ! how good a Conscience would that Man preserve, who would never seek after transitory Joy, nor ever busy himself with the World ! Oh ! how great Peace and Tranquillity would he possess, who would

cut

cut off all vain Solitude, and only think of the Things of GOD, and his Salvation, and place his whole Hope in GOD.

5. No Man is worthy of heavenly Comfort, who has not diligently exercised himself in holy Compunction. If thou wouldst find Compunction in thy Heart, retire into thy Chamber, and shut out the Tumults of the World, as it is written, Ps. iv. *Have Compunction in your Chambers.* Thou shalt find in thy Cell what thou shalt often lose abroad. Thy Cell, if thou continue in it, grows sweet; but if thou keep not to it, becomes tedious and distasteful. If in the Beginning of thy Conversion thou accustom thyself to remain in it, and keep it well, it will be to thee afterwards a dear Friend, and a most agreeable Delight.

6. In Silence and Quiet the devout Soul goes forward, and learns the Secrets of the Scriptures. There she finds Floods of Tears, with which she may wash and cleanse herself every Night: That she may become so much the more familiar with her Maker, by how much the farther she lives from all worldly Tumult. For GOD with his holy Angels will draw nigh to him, who withdraws himself from his Acquaintance and Friends. 'Tis better to lie hid, and take care of one's self, than neglecting one's self to do even Miracles. 'Tis commendable for a religious Man to go seldom

seldom abroad, to fly being seen, and not to desire to see Men.

7. Why wilt thou see what thou must not have? *The World passeth and its Concupiscence*. I St. *John* 2. The Desires of Sensuality draw thee abroad; but when the Hour is past, what dost thou bring home but a Weight upon the Conscience, and a Dissipation of Heart? A joyful going abroad often brings forth a sorrowful coming home; and a merry Evening makes a sad Morning: So all carnal Joy enters pleasantly, but in the End brings Remorse and Death. What canst thou see elsewhere which thou seest not here? Behold the Heaven and Earth, and all the Elements; for of these all things are made.

8. What canst thou see any-where which can continue long under the Sun. Thou thinkest perhaps to be satisfied, but thou canst not attain to it. If thou couldst see all things at once before thee, what would it be but a vain Sight? Lift up thy Eyes to God on high, and pray for thy Sins and Negligences. Leave vain Things to vain People; but mind thou the Things which God has commanded thee. Shut thy Door upon thee, and call to thee JESUS thy beloved. Stay with him in thy Cell, for thou shalt not find so great a Peace any-where else. If thou hadst not gone abroad, nor harken'd to Rumours, thou hadst kept thyself

Chap.
thyself
art deli
must fro

I F
t
too fre
Discip
Give t
thou
the W
is wor
any M
weigh
the m

2.
Tho
the S
laugh
The
in th
Hap
men
to th
is he
defi
full
tho
do

thyself better in good Peace ; but since thou art delighted sometimes to hear News, thou must from thence suffer a Disturbance of Heart.

C H A P. XXI.

Of Compunction of HEART.

IF thou wilt make any Progress, keep thyself in the Fear of GOD, and be not too free ; but restrain all thy Senses under Discipline, nor give thyself up to foolish Mirth. Give thyself to Compunction of Heart, and thou shalt find Devotion. Compunction opens the Way to much Good, which Dissolution is wont quickly to lose. 'Tis wonderful that any Man can heartily rejoice in this Life, who weighs and considers his Banishment, and the many Dangers of his Soul.

2. Thro' Levity of Heart, and the little Thought we have of our Defects, we feel not the Sorrows of our Soul ; but often vainly laugh, when in all Reason we ought to weep. There is no true Liberty, nor good Joy, but in the Fear of GOD with a good Conscience. Happy is he who can cast away all Impediments of Distractions, and recollect himself to the Union of holy Compunction : Happy is he who separates himself from all that may defile or burthen his Conscience. Strive manfully. Custom is overcome by Custom. If thou canst let Men alone, they will let thee do what thou hast to do.

3. Busy

3. Busy not thyself with other Mens Affairs, nor intangle thyself with the Causes of great ones : Have always an Eye upon thyself in the first place, and take special care to admonish thyself preferably to all thy dearest Friends. If thou hast not the Favour of Men, be not grieved at that ; but let thy Concern be, that thou dost not carry thyself so well and so circumspectly as it becomes a Servant of GOD, and a devout religious Man to demean himself. 'Tis oftentimes more profitable and more secure for a Man not to have many Comforts in this Life ; especially, according to the Flesh. Yet that we have not Divine Comforts, or seldomer experience them, is our own Fault ; because we don't seek Compunction of Heart, nor cast off altogether vain and outward Satisfaction.

4. Acknowledge thyself unworthy of divine Consolation, and rather worthy of much Tribulation. When a Man has perfect Compunction, then the whole World is burdensome and distasteful to him. A good Man always finds subject enough for mourning and weeping ; for whether he considers himself, or thinks of his Neighbour, he knows that no Man lives here without Tribulation ; and the more thoroughly he considers himself, the more he grieves. The Subjects for just Grief and interior Compunction are our Vices and Sins,

Chap.

Sins, in
ner, a
heaven

5. If

than of

more f

didst se

Punish

thou

Pain,

cause

we st

theret

6.

make

Pray

may

and t

O L

Dri

Of t

1. "

eft

W

suc

De

co

no

Sins, in which we lie entangled in such manner, as seeldom to be able to contemplate heavenly Things.

5. If thou wouldst oftner think of thy Death, than of a long Life, no doubt but thou wouldst more fervently amend thyself: Also if thou wouldst seriously consider in thy Heart the future Punishments of Hell, or Purgatory, I believe thou wouldst willingly endure Labour and Pain, and fear no kind of Austerity. But because these things reach not the Heart, and we still love the Things which flatter us, therefore we remain cold and very sluggish.

6. It is oftentimes a Want of Spirit, which makes the wretched Body so easily complain. Pray therefore humbly to our LORD, that he may give thee the Spirit of Compunction; and say with the Prophet (Ps. xxix.) *Feed me, O Lord, with the Bread of Tears, and give me Drink of Tears in Measure.*

C H A P. XXII.

Of the Consideration of the MISERY of Man.

1. **T**HOU art miserable wheresoever thou art, and whichsoever Way thou turnest thyself, unless thou turn thyself to GOD. Why art thou troubled because it does not succeed with thee according to thy Will and Desire? Who is there that has all things according to his Will? Neither I, nor thou, nor any Man upon Earth. There is no Man
in

in the World without some Trouble or Affliction, tho' he be a King or a Pope. What is it that is best at ease? Doubtless, he that is willing to suffer something for GOD's Sake

2. Many feeble and weak Men are apt to say, behold how well such a one lives, how rich, how great, how mighty and powerful he is. But attend to heavenly Goods, and thou wilt see that all these temporal Things are nothing; but very uncertain, and rather burdensome; because they are never possessed without Care and Fear. The Happiness of a Man consists not in having temporal Things in Abundance, but a moderate Competency sufficeth. 'Tis truly a Misery to live upon Earth. The more a Man desires to be spiritual, the more this present Life becomes distasteful to him; because he perceives the better, and more clearly sees the Defects of human Corruption: For to eat, drink, watch, sleep, rest, labour, and to be subject to other Necessities of Nature, is truly a great Misery and Affliction, and to a devout Man, who would be releas'd, and free from all Sin.

3. For the *inward* Man is very much burden'd with the Necessities of the Body in this World: And therefore the Prophet devoutly prays to be freed from them; saying, *From my Necessities deliver me, O Lord, Ps. xxiv.* But woe to them that know not their own

Misery,

or Affliction, and more woe to them that love this
 Whom miserable and corruptible Life: For some
 ne that there are that love it to that degree (altho'
 s Sake they can scarce get Necessaries by labouring
 apt to or begging) that if they could live always
 s, how here, they would not care at all for the King-
 werful dom of God.

4. O senseless People, and Infidels in heart,
 who lie buried so deep in earthly Things, as
 to relish nothing but the Things of the Flesh!
 Miserable Wretches! they shall in the End
 find to their Cost, how vile a Nothing that
 was which they so much loved. But the Saints
 of God and all the devout Friends of CHRIST
 made no account of what pleas'd the Flesh,
 or flourished in this Life; but their whole
 Hope and Intentions aspired to eternal Goods;
 their whole Desire tended upwards to Things
 everlasting and invisible; for fear lest the Love
 of visible Things should draw them down to
 Things below. Lose not, Brother, thy Con-
 fidence of going forward to spiritual Things:
 There is yet Time, the Hour is not yet past.

5. Why wilt thou put off thy Resolution
 from Day to Day? Arise, and begin this very
 Moment, and say; Now is the Time to be
 doing, now is the Time to fight; Now is the
 proper Time to amend my Life. When thou
 art ill at ease, and art afflicted, then is the
 Time to merit. Thou must pass through
 Fire

Fire and Water before thou comest to Refreshment. Unless thou do Violence to thyself, thou wilt not overcome Vice. As long as we carry about us this frail Body, we cannot be without Sin, nor live without Uneasiness and Sorrow. We would fain be at rest from all Misery; but because we have lost Innocence by Sin, we have also lost true Happiness. We must therefore have Patience and wait for the Mercy of God; till Iniquity pass away, and this Mortality be swallowed up by Life.

6. Oh! how great is human Frailty, which is always prone to Vice! To-day thou confessest thy Sins, and To-morrow thou again committest what thou hast confessed; now thou resolvest to take care, and an Hour after thou dost as if thou hadst never resolved; we have Reason therefore to humble ourselves, and never to think much of ourselves, since we are so frail and inconstant. That may also quickly be lost through Negligence, which with much Labour and Time was hardly gotten by Grace.

7. What will become of us yet in the End, who grow lukewarm so very soon? Woe be to us if we are for giving ourselves to Rest, as if we had already met with Peace and Security, when there does not as yet appear any Mark of true Sanctity in our Conversation.

to Repent. It would be very needful that we should
to thyself again, like good Novices, be instructed
s long in all good Behaviour: If so, perhaps there
e can were Hopes of some future Amendment, and
neaf greater spiritual Progress.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of the Thought of DEATH.

VERY quickly must thou be gone from
hence; see then how Matters stand
with thee: A Man is here To-day, and To-
morrow he is vanished; and when he is ta-
ken away from the Sight, he is quickly also out
of Mind. Oh! the Dulness and Hardness of
Man's Heart, which only thinks of what is
present, and looks not forward to Things to
come! Thou ought'st in every Action and
Thought so to order thyself, as if thou wert
immediately to die. If thou hadst a good Con-
science, thou wouldst not much fear Death.
It were better for thee to fly Sin than to be a-
fraid of Death. If thou art not prepared To-
day how wilt thou be To-morrow? To-mor-
row is an uncertain Day; and how dost thou
know that thou shalt be alive To-morrow?

2. What avails it to live long, when we ad-
vance so little? Ah! long Life does not al-
ways make us better, but often adds to our
Guilt! Would to God we had behaved our-
selves well in this World, even for one Day.
Many count the Years of their Conversion,
but

but oftentimes the Fruit of Amendment is but small. If it be frightful to die, perhaps it will be more dangerous to live longer. Blessed is he that has always the Hour of his Death before his Eyes, and every Day disposes himself to die. If thou hast at any time seen a Man die, think that thou must also pass the same Way.

3. In the Morning, imagine thou shalt not live till Night; and when the Evening comes, presume not to promise thyself the next Morning. Be therefore always prepared, and live in such manner that Death may never find thee unprovided. Many die suddenly, and when they little think of it; *For the Son of Man will come at the Hour when he is not looked for*, Mat. xxiv. When that last Hour shall come, thou wilt begin to have quite other Thoughts of thy whole Life past; and thou wilt be exceedingly grieved that thou hast been so negligent and remiss.

4. How happy and prudent is he who strives to be such now in his Life, as he desires to be found at his Death; for it will give a Man a great Confidence of dying happily, if he has a perfect Contempt of the World, a fervent Desire of advancing in Virtue, a Love for Discipline, the Spirit of Penitence, a ready Obedience, Self-denial, and Patience in bearing all Adversities for the Love of CHRIST. Thou mayst do many

good

Good Things whilst thou art well; but when thou art sick, I know not what thou canst do. Few are improved by Sicknes; so they also that travel much abroad seldom become holy.

5. Trust not in thy Friends and Kinsfolks, nor put off the Welfare of thy Soul to hereafter; for Men will sooner forget thee than thou imaginest. 'Tis better now to provide in Time, and send some Good before thee, than to trust to others helping thee after thy Death. If thou art not now careful for thyself, who will be careful for thee hereafter? The present Time is very precious: *Now are the Days of Salvation*: Now is an acceptable Time. But alas! that thou dost not spend this present Time more profitably, wherein thou mayst acquire a Stock on which thou mayst live for ever! The Time will come when thou wilt wish for one Day or Hour to amend; and I know not whether thou wilt obtain it.

6. O my dearly beloved, from how great a Danger mayst thou deliver thyself; from how great a Fear mayst thou be freed, if thou wilt but now be always fearful, and looking for Death! Strive now so to live, that in the Hour of thy Death thou mayst rather rejoice than fear. Learn now to die to the World, that then thou mayst begin to live with CHRIST. Learn now to despise all things, that then thou mayst freely go to CHRIST.

D

Chastise

Chastise thy Body now by Penance, that thou mayst then have an assured Confidence.

7. Ah fool ! Why dost thou think to live long, when thou art not sure of one Day ? How many thinking to live long have been deceived, and unexpectedly have been snatched away ? How often hast thou heard related, that such a one was slain by the Sword, another drown'd, another falling from on high broke his Neck ; this Man died at the Table ; that other came to his End when he was at play ? Some have perished by Fire, some by Sword, some by Pestilence, some by Robbers. Thus Death is the End of all, and Man's Life passeth suddenly like a Shadow.

8. Who will remember thee when thou art dead, and who will pray for thee ? Do now, my Beloved, do now all thou canst, because thou know'st not when thou shalt die ; nor dost thou know what shall befall thee after Death. Whilst thou hast Time heap up to thyself Riches that will never die. Think of nothing but thy Salvation ; care for nothing but the Things of GOD ; make now to thyself Friends by honouring the Saints of GOD, and imitating their Actions, that when thou shalt fail in this Life, they may receive thee into everlasting Dwellings. .

9. Keep thyself as a Pilgrim, and a Stranger upon Earth, to whom the Affairs of this

World

Chap.
World
free, a
thou h
ther th
that af
to pass

Of Ju
1. I N

to wh
Bribes
that v
foolish
to Go
who f
angry
thysel
no M
ther ;
to an
bour
thy S
satisf

2.
som
mor
own
Adv

World do nothing belong. Keep thy Heart free, and raised upwards to GOD ; because thou hast not here a lasting City. Send thither thy daily Prayers with Sighs and Tears, that after Death thy Spirit may be worthy to pass happily to our LORD. *Amen.*

C H A P. XXIV.

Of JUDGMENT, and the Punishments of SINS.

1. **I**N all Things look to thy End, and how thou shalt stand before a severe Judge, to whom nothing is hidden ; who takes no Bribes, nor receives Excuses ; but will judge that which is just. O most wretched and foolish Sinner, what Answer wilt thou make to GOD, who knows all thy Evils ; thou who sometimes art afraid of the Looks of an angry Man, why dost thou not provide for thyself against the Day of Judgment, when no Man can be excused or defended by another ; but every one shall have enough to do to answer for himself ? At present thy Labour is profitable, thy Tears are acceptable, thy Sighs will be heard, and thy Sorrow is satisfactory, and may purge away thy Sins.

2. A patient Man hath a great and wholesome Purgatory, who receiving Injuries, is more concerned at the other's Sin, than his own Wrong ; who willingly prays for his Adversaries, and from his Heart forgives Offences ;

fences ; who delays not to ask Forgiveness of others ; who is easier moved to Compassion than to Anger ; who frequently useth Violence to himself, and labours to bring the Flesh wholly under Subjection to the Spirit. 'Tis better now to purge away our Sins, and cut up our Vices, than to reserve them to be purged hereafter. Truly, we deceive ourselves through the inordinate Love we bear to our Flesh.

3. What other Thing shall that Fire feed on but thy Sins? The more thou sparest thyself now, and followest the Flesh, the more grievously shalt thou suffer hereafter, and the more Fuel dost thou lay up for that Fire. In what Things a Man has more sinned, in those shall he be more heavily punished. There the Slothful shall be pricked forward with burning Goads ; and the Gluttons shall be tormented with extreme Hunger and Thirst. There the Luxurious and the Lovers of Pleasures shall be covered all over with burning Pitch, and stinking Brimstone, and the Envious, like mad Dogs, shall howl for Grief.

4. There shall be no Vice which shall not have its proper Torment. There the Proud shall be filled with all Confusion ; and the Covetous shall be streightned with most miserable Want. There one Hour of Suffering shall be more sharp, than a hundred Years

here

ere spent in the most rigid Penance. There is no rest, no Comfort for the Damned; but here there is sometimes Intermission of Labour, and we receive Comfort from our Friends. Be careful at present, and sorrowful for thy Sins, that in the Day of Judgment thou mayst be secure with the Blessed. *For then the Just shall stand with great Constancy against those that afflicted and oppressed them,* Wisd. v. Then shall he stand to judge, who now humbly submits himself to the Judgment of Men. Then the Poor and Humble shall have great Confidence, and the Proud shall fear on every Side.

5. Then will it appear that he was wise in this World, who learn'd for CHRIST's Sake to be a Fool and despised. Then all Tribulation suffer'd with Patience will be pleasing; *and all Iniquity shall stop her Mouth,* Ps. cvi. Then every devout Person shall rejoice, and the Irreligious shall be sad: Then the Flesh that has been mortified shall triumph more than if it had been always pamper'd in Delights: Then shall the mean Habit shine, and fine Cloathing appear contemptible: Then shall the poor Cottage be more commended than the gilded Palace: Then constant Patience shall more avail than all the Power of the World: Then simple Obedience shall be more prized than all worldly Craftiness.

6. Then a pure and good Conscience shall be a greater Subject of Joy than learned Philosophy: Then the Contempt of Riches shall weigh more than all the Treasures of Worldlings: Then wilt thou be more comforted that thou hast prayed devoutly, than that thou hast fared daintily: Then wilt thou rejoice more that thou hast kept Silence, than that thou hast made long Discourses, or talked much: Then will holy Works be of greater Value than many fair Words: Then will a strict Life and hard Penance be more pleasing than all the Delights of the Earth. Learn to present to suffer in little Things, that thou mayst be deliver'd from more grievous Sufferings. Try first here what thou canst do hereafter: If thou canst now endure so little, how shalt thou be able to bear everlasting Torments? If a little Suffering now makes thee so impatient, what will Hell-fire do hereafter? Surely, thou canst not have two Heavens? Thou canst not have thy Pleasure in this World, and afterwards reign with CHRIST.

7. If to this Day thou hadst always lived in Honours and Pleasures, what would it avail thee, if thou wert now in a Moment to die? All then is Vanity, but to love GOD, and to serve him alone! For he that loves GOD with his whole Heart, neither fears Death, nor Punishment,

ishment, nor Judgment, nor Hell; because perfect Love gives secure Access to God. But he that is yet delighted with Sin, no Wonder if he be afraid of Death and Judgment. 'Tis good, however, that if Love as yet reclaim thee not from Evil, at least the Fear of Hell restrain thee. But he that lays aside the Fear of God, will not be able to continue long in Good; but will quickly fall into the Snares of the Devil.

C H A P. XXV.

Of the fervent Amendment of our whole LIFE.

1. **B**E vigilant and diligent in God's Service, and often think with thyself, to what End thou camest hither, and why thou didst leave the World: Was it not that thou mightst live to God, and become a spiritual Man? Be fervent therefore in thy spiritual Progress, for thou shalt shortly receive the Reward of thy Labours, and then Fear and Grief shall be no more in thy Confines. Thou shalt labour now a little, and thou shalt find great Rest; yea, everlasting Joy. If thou continue faithful and fervent in Working, God will doubtless be faithful and liberal in Rewarding. Thou must preserve a good and firm Hope of coming to the Crown; but must not think thyself secure, lest thou grow negligent or proud.

2. When

2. When a certain Person in Anxiety of Mind was often wavering between Hope and Fear, and on a Time being overwhelmed with Grief had prostrated himself in Prayer in the Church before a certain Altar, he revolved these Things within himself, saying *If I did but know that I should still persevere* And presently he heard within him an Answer from GOD: *And if thou didst know this what wouldst thou do? Do now what thou wouldst then do, and thou shalt be very secure* And immediately being comforted and strengthened he committed himself to the Divine Will, and his anxious Wavering ceased: Neither had he a Mind any more to search curiously to know what should befall him hereafter; but rather studied to inquire what was the Will of GOD, *well pleasing and perfect*, for the beginning and accomplishing every good Work.

3. *Hope in the LORD, and do Goodness*, (saith the Prophet, *Pf. xxx.*) *and inhabit the Land, and thou shalt be fed with the Riches thereof*. There is one Thing which keeps many back from a spiritual Progress and fervent Amendment of Life; and that is the Apprehension of Difficulty, or the Labour which must be gone through in the Conflict. And they indeed advance most of all others in Virtues, who strive more manfully to overcome

xiety of some those things which they find more trou-
 ppe and lesome or contrary to them : For there a
 helme Man makes greater Progres, and merits
 Prayer greater Grace where he overcomes himself
 he re more, and mortifies himself in Spirit.

4. But all Men have no alike to overcome
 and mortify ; yet he that is diligent and zeal-
 ous, altho' he have more Passions to fight
 against, will be able to make a greater Pro-
 gress than another that has fewer Passions,
 but is withal less fervent in the Pursuit of
 Virtues. Two Things particularly conduce
 to a great Amendment ; to wit, forcibly to
 withdraw one's self from that to which Nature
 is viciously inclined, and earnestly to labour
 for that Good which one wants the most.
 Study likewise to fly more carefully, and to
 overcome those Faults, which ofteneft dis-
 please thee in others.

5. Turn all Occasions to thy spiritual Pro-
 fit : So that if thou seeft or hearest any good
 Examples, thou mayft be spurred on to imi-
 tate them : But if thou observe any thing that
 is blame-worthy, take heed thou commit
 not the same ; or if thou at any time hast done
 it, labour to amend it out of hand. As thine
 Eye observes others, so art thou also observed
 by others. Oh ? how sweet and comfortable
 it is to see Brethren fervent and devout, re-
 gular and well disciplin'd ! How sad a Thing
 and

and how afflicting to see such as walk disorderly, and who practise nothing of what they are called to ! How hurtful it is to neglect the Intent of one's Vocation, and to turn one's Mind to things that are not our Business.

6. Be mindful of the Resolution thou hast taken, and set before thee the Image of the *Crucifix*. Well mayst thou be ashamed, thou lookest upon the Life of JESUS CHRIST that thou hast not yet studied to conform thyself more to his Pattern, altho' thou hast been long in the Way of God. A religious Man who exercises himself seriously and devoutly in the most holy Life and Passion of our LORD shall find there abundantly all things profitable and necessary for him: Nor need he seek for any thing better out of JESUS. Oh ! JESUS crucified did but come into our Heart how quickly and sufficiently learned should we be !

7. A fervent religious Man bears and takes all things well that are commanded him. A negligent and lukewarm religious Man has Trouble upon Trouble, and on every Side suffers Anguish ; because he has no Comfort within, and is hindered from seeking any without. A Religious that lives not in Discipline lies open to dreadful Ruin. He that seeks to be more loose and remiss will always be uneasy, for one thing or other will always displease him.

8. How

8. How do so many other Religious do, who live under strict monastic Discipline? They seldom go abroad, they live retiredly, their Diet is very poor, their Habit coarse, they labour much, they speak little, they watch long, they rise early, they spend much Time in Prayer, they read often, and keep themselves in all kind of Discipline. Consider the *Carthusians*, the *Cistercians*, and the Monks and Nuns of diverse Orders, how every Night they rise to sing Psalms to our LORD. And therefore it would be a Shame for thee to be sluggish at so holy a Time, when such a Multitude of Religious begin with Joy to give Praises to GOD.

9. Oh! that we had nothing else to do but to praise the LORD our GOD with our whole Heart and Mouth! Oh! that thou didst never want to eat, nor drink, nor sleep, but couldst always praise GOD, and be only employed in spiritual Exercises! Thou wouldst then be much more happy than now, whilst thou art under a Necessity of serving the Flesh: Would to GOD there were no such Necessities, but only the spiritual Refreshments of the Soul, which, alas, we taste too seldom!

10. When a Man is come to this, that he seeks his Comfort from nothing created, then he first begins perfectly to relish GOD; then likewise will he be well content, however
Matters

Matters happen to him. Then will he neither rejoyce for much, nor be sorrowful a little; but will commit himself wholly and confidently to GOD, who is to him all in all, to whom nothing perishes or dies, but all things live to him, and serve him at a beat without Delay.

II. Always remember thy End, and the Time lost never returns. Without Care and Diligence thou shalt never acquire Virtue. If thou beginnest to grow lukewarm, thou shalt begin to be ill at Ease. But if thou grow thyself to Fervour, thou shalt find great Peace and the Grace of GOD and Love of Virtue will make thee feel less Labour. A fervent and diligent Man is ready for all things. 'Tis a greater Labour to resist Vices and Passions than to toil at bodily Labours? He that does not shun small Defects, by little and little falls into greater. Thou wilt always rejoyce in the Evening, if thou spend the Day profitably. Watch over thyself, stir up thyself, admonish thyself, and whatever becomes of others neglect not thyself. The greater Violence thou offerest to thyself, the greater Progress thou shalt make. *Amen.*

The End of the First Book.

Book
l he n
wful
olly a
ll in a
but
t a be

and th
are a
Virtu
, th
ou gi
Peac
Virt
serve
s. 'T
ffion
at do
le fal
in th
tabl
onil
ther
lenc
gre

H E

T H E

Following of CHRIST.

B O O K II.

C H A P. I.

Of Interior CONVERSATION.

THE Kingdom of GOD is within you, saith our LORD, *Luke vii.* Convert thyself with thy whole Heart to the LORD, and quit this miserable World; and thy Soul shall find Rest. Learn to despise exterior Things, and give thyself to the interior, and thou shalt see the Kingdom of GOD will come into thee; for the Kingdom of GOD is Peace and Joy in the Holy Ghost, which is not given to the Wicked. CHRIST will come to thee, discovering his Consolation to thee, if thou wilt prepare him a fit Dwelling within thee. All his Glory and Beauty is in the Interior, and there he pleaseth himself: Many a Visit doth he make to the *internal Man*, sweet is his Communication with him, delightful his Consolation, much Peace, and a Familiarity exceedingly to be admired.

2. O faithful Soul, prepare thy Heart for this thy Spouse, that he may vouchsafe to

E

come

come to thee, and dwell in thee; for so he saith : *If any Man loves me he will keep my Word, and we will come to him and we will make our Abode with him.* John xiv. Make room then for CHRIST within thee, and deny Entrance to all others. When thou hast CHRIST, thou art rich, and he is sufficient for thee; he will provide for thee, and will be thy faithful *Procurator* in all things, so that thou needest not trust in Men, for Men quickly change, and presently fail; but CHRIST remains for ever, and stands by us firmly to the end.

3. There is no great Confidence to be put in a frail mortal Man, tho' he be profitable and beloved; nor much Grief to be taken if sometimes he be against thee, and cross thee. They that are with thee To-day, may be against thee To-morrow; and, no the other hand, often change like the Wind. Place thy whole Confidence in GOD, and let him be thy Fear and thy Love; he will answer for thee, and do for thee what is for thee best. Thou hast not here a lasting City, and wherever thou art thou art a Stranger and a Pilgrim; nor shalt thou ever have Rest, unless thou be interiorly united to CHRIST.

4. Why dost thou stand looking about thee here, since this is not thy Resting Place? Thy Dwelling must be in Heaven; and all

the

the things of the Earth are only to be looked upon as in passing by. All Things pass away, and thou along with them; see that thou cleave not to them, lest thou be ensnared, and be lost. Let thy Thought be with the most High, and thy Prayer directed to CHRIST without Intermission. If thou knowest not how to meditate on high and heavenly Things, rest on the Passion of CHRIST, and willingly dwell in his sacred Wounds; for if thou fly devoutly to the Wounds and precious Stigmata of JESUS, thou shalt feel great Comfort in Tribulation; neither wilt thou much regard the being despised by Men, and thou wilt easily bear up against detracting Tongues.

5. CHRIST was also in this World despised by Men; and in his greatest Necessity forsaken by his Acquaintance and Friends in the midst of Reproaches. CHRIST would suffer and be despised, and dost thou dare to complain of any one? CHRIST had Adversaries and Backbiters; and wouldst thou have all to be thy Friends and Benefactors? Whence shall thy Patience be crowned, if thou meet with no Adversity? If thou wilt suffer no Opposition, how wilt thou be a Friend of CHRIST? Suffer with CHRIST and for CHRIST, if thou wilt reign with CHRIST.

6. If thou hadst once perfectly entered into the Interior of JESUS, and tasted a little of

his burning Love, then wouldst thou not care at all for thy own Convenience or Inconvenience, but wouldst rather rejoyce at reproach; because the Love of JESUS makes a Man despise himself. A Lover of JESUS and of Truth, and a true internal Man, that is free from inordinate Affections, can freely turn himself to GOD, and elevate himself above himself in Spirit, and rest in Enjoyment.

7. He to whom all Things relish as they are [*viz.* in GOD, who is the very Truth] not as they are said or esteemed to be: He is wise indeed, and taught rather by GOD than by Men. He who knows how to walk internally, and to make little Account of external Things, is not at a loss for proper Places or Times for performing devout Exercises. An internal Man quickly recollects himself, because he never pours forth his whole self upon outward Things. Exterior Labour is no Prejudice to him, or any Employment which for a Time is necessary: But as things fall out, so he accommodates himself to them. He that is well disposed and orderly in his Interior, heeds not the strange and perverse Carriages of Men. As much as a Man draws Things to himself, so much is he hindered and distracted by them.

8. If it were right with thee, and thou wert well purged, all things would turn to thy Good

ou not
or In-
oice at
makes
US and
is free
y turn
above
nt.
s they
ruth
He is
o that
k in-
f ex-
laces
cises
nself
e fel
our is
ment
ings
f to
erly
and
as a
h is
hou
thy
ood

Chap. 2. of CHRIST. 61

Good and to thy Profit. For this Reason do many Things displease thee, and often trouble thee : because thou art not as yet perfectly dead to thyself, nor separated from all earthly Things. Nothing so defiles and intangles the Heart of Man, as impure Love to created Things. If thou reject exterior Comfort, thou wilt be able to contemplate heavenly Things, and frequently to feel excessive Joy interiorly.

C H A P. II.

Of Humble SUBMISSION.

1. **M**AKE no great Account who is for thee, or against thee : But let it be thy Business and thy Care, that GOD may be with thee in every Thing thou dost. Have a good Conscience, and GOD will sufficiently defend thee. For he whom GOD will help, no Man's Malice can hurt. If thou canst but hold thy Peace and suffer, thou shalt see without doubt that the LORD will help thee. He knows the Time and Manner of delivering thee, and therefore thou must resign thyself to him. It belongs to GOD to help and to deliver from all Confusion. Oftentimes it is very profitable for the keeping us in greater Humility, that others know and reprehend our Faults.

2. When a Man humbles himself for his Defects, he then easily appeases others, and

quickly satisfies those that are angry with him. The humble Man GOD protects and delivers: The Humble he loves and comforts; to the Humble he inclines himself; to the Humble he gives Grace; and after he has been depressed, raises him to Glory. To the Humble he reveals his Secrets, and sweetly draws him and invites him to himself. The humble Man having received Reproach maintains himself well enough in Peace, because he is fixed in GOD, and not in the World. Never think thou hast made any Progress till thou look upon thyself inferior to all.

C H A P. III.

Of a good peaceable MAN.

1. **K**EEP thyself first in Peace, and then thou wilt be able to bring others to Peace. A peaceable Man does more good than one that is very learned. A passionate Man turns even Good into Evil, and easily believes Evil. A good peaceable Man turns all things to Good. He that is well in Peace suspects no Man; but he that is discontented and disturbed, is tossed about with various Suspicions; he is neither easy himself, nor does he suffer others to be easy. He often says that which he should not say, and omits that which would be better for him to do. He considers what others are obliged to do; and neglects that to which he himself is obliged.

Chap. 3. of CHRIST.

63

bliged. Have therefore a Zeal in the first Place over thyself, and then thou mayst justly exercise thy Zeal towards thy Neighbour.

2. Thou knowest well enough how to excuse and colour thy own doings, and thou wilt not take the Excuses of others. It were more just that thou shouldst accuse thyself and excuse thy Brother. If thou wilt be borne withal, bear also with another: See how far thou art yet from true Charity and Humility; which knows not how to be angry with any one, or to have Indignation against any one but one's self. 'Tis no great Thing to be able to converse with them that are Good and Meek; for this naturally is pleasing to all: And every one would willingly have Peace, and loves those best that agree with him. But to live peaceably with those that are harsh and perverse or disorderly, or such as thwart us, is a great Grace, and a highly commendable and manly Exploit.

3. Some there are that keep themselves in Peace, and have Peace also with others. And there are some that neither are at Peace in themselves, nor suffer others to be in Peace; they are troublesome to others, but always more troublesome to themselves. And some there are who keep themselves in Peace, and labour to bring others to Peace. Yet all our Peace in this miserable Life is rather to be

placed in humble suffering, than in not feeling Adversities. He who best knows how to suffer, will enjoy most Peace. Such a one is a Conqueror of himself, and Lord of the World, a Friend of CHRIST, and Heir of Heaven.

C H A P. IV.

Of a pure MIND and simple INTENTION.

1. **W**ITH two Wings a Man is lifted up above earthly Things; that is, with *Simplicity* and *Purity*. *Simplicity* must be in the Intention, *Purity* in the Affection. *Simplicity* aims at GOD, *Purity* takes hold of him, and tastes him. No good Action will hinder thee, if thou be free within from inordinate Affection. If thou intendest and seekest nothing else but the Will of GOD, and the Profit of thy Neighbour, thou shalt enjoy internal Liberty. If thy Heart were right then every Creature would be to thee a Looking-glass of Life, and a Book of holy Doctrine. There is no Creature so little and vile as not to represent the Goodness of GOD.

2. If thou wert within good and pure, then wouldst thou discern all things without Impediment, and understand them right: A pure Heart penetrates Heaven and Hell. According as every one is interiorly, so he judgeth exteriorly. If there be Joy in the World, certainly the Man whose Heart is pure enjoys it. And if there be any where Tribulation and Anguish, an evil Consci-

ence feels the most of it. As Iron put into the Fire loses the Rust, and becomes all fiery; so a Man that turns himself wholly to God, puts off his Sluggishness, and is changed into a new Man.

3. When a Man begins to grow lukewarm, he is afraid of a little Labour, and willingly takes external Comfort. But when he begins perfectly to overcome himself, and to walk manfully in the Way of God, then he makes less Account of those Things, which before he perceived burdensome to him.

C H A P. V.

Of the Consideration of ONE'S SELF.

I. **W**E cannot trust much to ourselves, because we often want Grace and Understanding. There is but little Light in us, and this we quickly lose through Negligence. Many times also we perceive not that we are so blind interiorly. We often do ill, and do worse in excusing it: We are sometimes moved with Passion, and we take it for Zeal: We blame little Things in others, and pass over greater Things in ourselves. We are quick enough at perceiving and weighing what we suffer from others; but we mind not what others suffer from us. He that would well and duly weigh his own Deeds, would have no room to judge hard of others.

2. An internal Man prefers the Care of himself

himself before all other Cares, and he that diligently attends to himself, is easily silent of others. Thou wilt never be internal and devout, unless thou pass over in silence other Mens Concerns, and particularly look to thyself. If thou attend wholly to thyself and GOD, thou wilt be little moved with what thou perceivest without thee. Where art thou when thou art not present to thyself? And when thou hast run over all things, what Profit will it be to thee, if thou hast neglected thyself? If thou desirest to have Peace and true Union, thou must set all the rest aside, and turn thy Eyes upon thyself alone.

3. Thou wilt then make great Progress, if thou keep thyself free from all temporal Care. But if thou set a Value upon any thing temporal, thou wilt fail exceedingly. Let nothing be great in thy Eyes, nothing high, nothing pleasant, nothing agreeable to thee, except it be purely GOD, or of GOD. Look upon all that vain which thou meetest with of Comfort from any Creature. A Soul that loveth GOD despiseth all things that are less than GOD. None but GOD eternal and incomprehensible, who fills all things, is the Comfort of the Soul, and the true Joy of the Heart.

C H A P. VI.

Of the Joy of a good CONSCIENCE.

1. **T**HE Glory of a good Man is the Testimony of a good Conscience. Keep

he that hath a good Conscience, and thou shalt always have Joy. A good Conscience can bear very much, and is very joyful in the midst of Adversity. A bad Conscience is always fearful and uneasy. Sweetly wilt thou take thy Rest, if thy Heart reprehend thee not. Never rejoice but when thou hast done well. The Wicked never have true Joy, neither do they feel internal Peace ; because, *There is no Peace to the Wicked*, saith the LORD, *Isai. xlvi. 1.* And if they shall say, we are in Peace, Evils will not come upon us, and who shall dare to hurt us? Believe them not ; for the Wrath of GOD shall rise on a sudden, and their Deeds shall be brought to nothing and their Projects shall perish.

2. To glory in Tribulation is not hard to him that loves ; for so to glory is to glory in the Cross of our LORD. That Glory is short-lived, which is given and taken by Men. The Glory of this World is always accompanied with Sorrow. The Glory of Men is in their own Consciences, not in the Mouths of others. The Joy of the Just is from GOD, and in GOD ; and they rejoice in the *Truth*. He that desires true and everlasting Glory, values not that which is temporal. And he that seeks after temporal Glory, or does not heartily despise it, shews himself to have little Love for that which is heavenly.

That

That Man has great Tranquillity of Heart who neither cares for Praises nor Dispraises.

3. He will easily be content, and in Peace whose Conscience is clean. Thou art not more holy, if thou art praised; nor anything the worse if thou art dispraised. What thou art, that thou art; nor canst thou be said to be greater than GOD sees thee to be. If thou consider'd well what thou art within thyself, thou wilt not care what Men say of thee. Man beholds the Face, but GOD looks upon the Heart. Man considers the Actions, but GOD weighs the Intentions. To do always well, and to hold one's self in small Account, is a Mark of an humble Soul. To refuse Comfort from any created Thing, is a Sign of great Purity and interior Confidence.

4. He that seeks no outward Testimony for himself, shews plainly that he has committed himself wholly to GOD; *For not he that commendeth himself* (saith St. Paul 2 Cor. x.) *is approv'd, but he whom GOD commendeth.* To walk with GOD *within*, and not to be held by any Affection *without*, is the State of an *internal* Man.

C H A P. VII.

Of the Love of JESUS above all Things.

1. **B**less'd is he who knows what it is to love JESUS, and to despise himself for the Sake of JESUS. We must quit what we love for *this* Beloved, because JESUS will

be loved alone above all Thiugs. The Love of Things created is deceitful and inconstant : The Love of JESUS is faithful and perseverant. He that cleaveth to Creatures shall fall with them : He that embraceth JESUS shall stand firm for ever. Love him, and keep him for thy Friend; who, when all go away, will not leave thee, nor suffer thee to perish in the end. Thou must at last be separated from all things else, whether thou wilt or no.

2. Keep thyself with JESUS both in Life and Death; and commit thyself to his Trust, who alone can help thee, when all fail. Thy Beloved is of such a Nature, that he will admit of no other; but will have thy Heart to himself, and sit there like a King in his own Throne. If thou couldest but purge thyself well from Affection to Creatures, JESUS would willingly dwell with thee. Thou wilt find all that in a manner lost, which thou hast placed in Men, out of JESUS. Don't trust nor rely upon a windy Reed; *For all Flesh is Grass, and all the Glory thereof shall fall like the Flower of the Grass*, Isai xl.

3. Thou wilt soon be deceived, if thou only regard the outward shew of Men. For if thou seek thy Comfort and thy Gain in others, thou wilt often meet with Loss. If in all thou seek JESUS, doubtless thou wilt find JESUS : But if thou seek thyself, thou wilt indeed

indeed find thyself; but to thy own Ruin. For a Man does himself more Harm if he seek not JESUS, than the whole World and all his Enemies could do him.

C H A P. VIII.

Of familiar Friendship with JESUS.

1. **W**HEN JESUS is present, all goes well, and nothing seems difficult: But when JESUS is absent, every thing is hard. When Jesus speaks not within, our Comfort is nothing worth: But if JESUS speaks but one Word, we feel a great Consolation. Did not *Mary Magdalen* arise presently from the Place where she wept, when *Martha* said to her; *The Master is here and calls for thee*, John xiii? Happy Hour, when JESUS calls from Tears to Joy of Spirit! How dry and hard art thou without JESUS! How foolish and vain if thou desire any thing out of JESUS! Is not this a greater Damage than if thou wert to lose the whole World?

2. What can the World profit thee without JESUS? To be without JESUS is a grievous Hell; and to be with JESUS a sweet Paradise. If JESUS be with thee, no Enemy can hurt thee. Whosoever finds JESUS, finds a good Treasure, yea good above all Goods. And he that loseth JESUS, loseth exceeding much, and more than if he lost the whole World. He is wretchedly poor, who lives
without

Chap. 3. of CHRIST.

71

without JESUS; and he is exceeding rich, who is well with JESUS.

3. 'Tis a great Art to know to converse with JESUS; and to know how to keep JESUS is great Wisdom. Be humble and peaceable, and JESUS will be with thee. Be devout and quiet, and JESUS will stay with thee. Thou mayst quickly drive away JESUS, and lose his Grace, if thou decline after outward Things. And if thou drive him from thee, and lose him, to whom wilt thou fly, and whom then wilt thou seek for thy Friend? Without a Friend thou canst not well live, and if JESUS be not thy Friend above all, thou wilt be exceeding sad and desolate. Thou actest then foolishly, if thou puttest thy Trust, or rejoicest in any other. We ought rather to chuse to have the whole World against us, than to offend JESUS. Of all therefore that are dear to thee, let JESUS always be thy special beloved.

4. Let all be loved for JESUS's Sake, but JESUS for himself. JESUS CHRIST alone is singularly to be loved, who alone is found good and faithful above all Friends; for him and in him let both Friends and Enemies be dear to thee; and for all these must thou pray to him, that all may know and love him. Never desire to be singularly praised or beloved; for this belongs to GOD alone,
who

who hath none like to himself. Neither desire that any one's Heart should be set on thee; nor do thou let thyself be taken up with the Love of any one: But let JESUS be in thee, and in every good Man.

5. Be pure and free interiorly, without being entangled by any Creature. Thou must be naked and must carry a pure Heart to God; if thou wilt attend at leisure, and see how sweet is the LORD. And indeed thou wilt never attain to this, unless thou be prevented and drawn in by his Grace; that so thou mayst all *alone* be united to him *alone*, having cast out and dismissed all others: For when the Grace of GOD comes to a Man, then he is strong and powerful for all things; and when it departs, then shall he be poor and weak, left as it were only to Stripes. In these he must not be dejected nor despair; but stand with an even Mind, resigned to the Will of GOD, and bear for the Glory of JESUS CHRIST whatever shall befall him; because after Winter comes Summer; after the Night the Day returns; and after a Storm there follows a great Calm.

CH A P. IX.

Of the Want of all COMFORT.

I. 'TIS not hard to despise all human Comfort, when we have Divine. But 'tis much

much and very much to be able to want all Comfort both Human and Divine; and to be willing to bear this interior Banishment for God's Honour, and to seek one's self in nothing, nor to think of one's own Merit. What great Thing is it, if thou be chearful and devout when Grace comes? This Hour is desirable to all. He rides at ease, that is carried by the Grace of GOD. And what Wonder, if he feels no Weight, who is carried by the Almighty, and led on by the Sovereign Guide?

2. We willingly would have something to comfort us; and 'tis with Difficulty that a Man can put off himself. The holy Martyr, *Laurence*, overcame the World with his Prelate; because he despised whatever seem'd delightful in this World; and for the Love of CHRIST he also suffered the High-Priest of GOD, *Sixtus*, whom he exceedingly loved, to be taken away from him. He overcame therefore the Love of Man by the Love of the Creator: And instead of the Comfort he had in Man, he made choice rather of GOD's Pleasure. So do thou also learn to part with a necessary and beloved Friend for the Love of GOD. And take it not to heart, when thou art forsaken by a Friend; knowing that one Time or other we must all part.

3. A Man must go thro' a long and great Conflict in himself, before he can learn fully to overcome himself, and to draw his whole Affection towards God. When a Man stands upon himself, he easily declines after humane Comforts. But a true Lover of CHRIST and a diligent Pursuer of Virtues does not hunt after Comforts, nor seek such sensibleness; but is rather willing to be through strong Trials and hard Labours for CHRIST.

4. Therefore when GOD gives spiritual Comfort, receive it with Thanksgiving; but know that it is the Bounty of GOD, not thy Merit. Be not puffed up, be not overjoyed nor vainly presume, but rather be the more humble for this Gift, and the more cautious and fearful in all thy Actions; for this Help will pass away, and Temptation will follow. When Comfort shall be taken away from thee, don't presently despair; but wait with Humility and Patience for the heavenly visitation for GOD is able to restore thee a greater Comfort and consolation. This is no new thing, nor strange to those that have experienced the Ways of GOD; for in the great Saints, and ancient Prophets, there has often been this Kind of Variety.

5. Hence one said, at the Time when Grace was with him, *I said in my Abundance, I shall not be moved for ever*, Ps. xxix. But when Grace was retired, he immediately tells

us what he experienced in himself : *Thou hast turned away thy Face from me, and I became troubled ; yet in the mean time he despairs not, but more earnestly prays to our LORD, and says : To thee, O LORD, will I cry, and I will pray to my GOD. Lastly, he receives the Fruit of his Prayer, and witnesses that he was heard, saying : The LORD hath heard me, and hath had Mercy on me : The LORD is become my Helper : But in what Manner ? Thou hast turned, says he, my Mourning into Joy to me, and thou hast compassed me with Gladness. If it has been thus with great Saints, we that are weak and poor must not be discouraged, if we are sometimes in Fervour, sometimes cold ; because the Spirit comes and goes according to his own good Pleasure ; wherefore holy Job says : Thou dost visit him early in the Morning, and on a sudden thou triest him, Job vii.*

6. Wherein then can I hope, or in what must I put my Trust, but in GOD's great Mercy alone, and in the Hope of heavenly Grace ! For whether I have with me good Men, or devout Brethren, or faithful Friends, or holy Books, or fine Treatises, or sweet Singing and Hymns ; all these help little and give me but little Relish, when I am forsaken by Grace, and left in my own Poverty. At such a Time there is no better Remedy than
Patience,

Patience, and leaving myself to GOD's Will.

7. I never found any one so religious and devout, as not to have sometimes a Subtraction of Grace, or to feel a Diminution of Favour. No Saint was ever so highly wrapt and illuminated, as not to be tempted at first, and at last : For he is not worthy of the high Contemplation of GOD, who has not for GOD's Sake been exercised with some Tribulation. For Temptation going before is usually a Sign of ensuing Consolation. For heavenly Comfort is promised to such as have been proved by Temptations, *To him that shall overcome, saith our LORD, Apoc. iii. I will give to eat of the Tree of Life.*

8. Now Divine Consolation is given, that a Man may be better able to support Adversities ; and Temptation follows, that he may not be proud of Good. The Devil never sleeps, neither is the Flesh yet dead ; therefore thou must not cease to prepare thyself for Battle : For on the Right-Hand, and on the Left are Enemies that never rest.

C H A P. X.

Of Gratitude for the GRACE of GOD.

1. **W**HYY seekest thou Rest, since thou art born to labour ? Dispose thyself to Patience, rather than Consolation ; and to bear the Cross rather than to rejoice ; for who is there amongst worldly People, that would

God's Will would not willingly receive Comfort and spiritual Joy, if he could always have it? For spiritual Consolations exceed all the Delights of the World, and Pleasures of the Flesh: For all worldly Delights are either vain, or filthy; but spiritual Delights alone are pleasant and honest, springing from Virtue, and infused by God into pure Minds. But these Divine Consolations no Man can always enjoy when he will; because the Time of Temptation is not long away.

2. But what very much opposes these heavenly Visits is a false Liberty of Mind, and a great Confidence in one's self. God does well in giving the Grace of Consolation; but Man does ill in not returning it all to God with Thanksgiving. And this is the Reason why the Gift of Grace cannot flow in us; because we are ungrateful to the Giver; nor do we return all to the Fountain's Head; for Grace is ever due to him that duly returns Thanks; and what is wont to be given to the Humble will be taken away from the Proud.

3. I would not have any such Consolation as will rob me of Compunction; nor do I affect such Contemplation as leads to Pride. For all that is high is not holy: Nor all that is pleasant, good: Nor every Desire, pure; nor is every thing that is dear to us, pleasing to

to GOD. I willingly accept of that Grace which makes me always more humble and fearful, and more ready to forsake myself. He that has been taught by the Gift of Grace, and instructed by the Scourge of the Word, drawing of it, will not dare to attribute anything of Good to himself; but will rather confess himself poor and naked. Give GOD what is his; and take to thyself what is thine: That is, give Thanks to GOD for Grace; but as to thyself, be sensible that nothing is to be attributed to thee, but Sin, and the Punishment due to Sin.

4. Put thyself always in the lowest Place, and the highest shall be given thee; for the highest stands not without the lowest. The Saints that are highest in the Sight of GOD, are the least in their own Eyes; and the more glorious they are, the more humble are they in themselves. Being full of the Truth and heavenly Glory, they are not desirous of Vain glory. They that are grounded and established in GOD, can by no means be proud; and they that attribute all to GOD, whatsoever Good they have received, seek not Glory from one another, but that Glory which is from GOD alone; and desire above all Things that GOD may be praised in themselves, and in all the Saints; and to this same they always tend.

5. Be grateful then for the least, and thou shalt

hat Gr^{at} be worthy to receive greater Things.
 umble Let the least be to thee as something very
 ke my great; and the most contemptible as a special
 of Gr^{at} Favour. If thou consider the Dignity of the
 the w^{ill} Giver, no Gift will seem to thee little or con-
 tribute a^{nt} temptible: For nothing is little which is gi-
 vill rat^{ed} ven by so great a GOD. Yea, tho' he give
 Give Punishment and Stripes, it ought to be ac-
 elf wha^{nt} ceptable; for whatever he suffers to befall us,
 D for he always does it for our Salvation! He that
 that desires to retain the Grace of GOD, let him
 Sin, be thankful for Grace when it is given, pati-
 ent when it is withdrawn. Let him pray
 ft Pl^{at} that it may return. Let him be cautious and
 for humble, lest he lose it.

C H A P. XI.

*Of the small Number of the Lovers of the CROSS
 of JESUS.*

I. JESUS has now many Lovers of his
 heavenly Kingdom; but few that are
 willing to bear his Cross. He has many that
 are desirous of Comfort; but few of Tribula-
 tion. He finds many Companions of his
 Table; but few of his Abstinence. All desire
 to rejoice with him, few are willing to suffer
 for him. Many follow JESUS to the breaking
 of Bread; but few to the drinking the Chalice
 of his Passion. Many reverence his Miracles;
 but few follow the Ignominy of his Cross.
 Many love JESUS as long as they meet with
 no

no Adversity: Many praise him and bless him as long as they receive Consolations from him. But if JESUS hide himself, and leave them for a little while; they either fall into Complaints, or excessive Dejection.

2. But they that love JESUS for JESUS Sake, and not for any Comfort of their own, bless him no less in Tribulation and Anguish of Heart, than in the greatest Consolation. And if he should never give them his Comfort, yet would they always praise him, and always give him Thanks.

3. Oh! how much is the pure Love JESUS able to do, when 'tis not mix'd with any Self-interest or Self-love! Are not those to be called Hirelings, who are always seeking Consolations? Are they not convinced to be rather Lovers of themselves than of CHRIST, who are always thinking of their own Profit and Gain? Where shall we find the Man that is willing to serve GOD *gratis*?

4. Seldom do we find any one so spiritual as to be stripped of all things; for who shall be able to find the Man that is truly poor in Spirit, and naked of all things created? *His Value is [as of Things that are brought] from afar, and from the remotest Coasts.* Prov. xxxi. If a Man give his whole Substance, 'tis yet nothing: And if he do great Penance, 'tis yet little: And if he attain to all Knowledge, he

is far off still: And if he have great Virtue, and exceeding fervent Devotion, there is still much wanting to him; to wit, one Thing, which is chiefly necessary for him. And what is that? That having left all things else, he leave also himself, and wholly get out of himself, and retain nothing of self-love. And when he shall have done all things, which he knows should be done, let him think he has done nothing.

5. Let him not make great account of that which may appear much to be esteemed; but let him in *Truth* confess himself to be an unprofitable Servant; as Truth itself has said, St. Luke xvii. *When ye shall have done all that is commanded you, say, We are unprofitable Servants.* Then may he be truly poor and naked in Spirit, and may say with the Prophet, *Psf. xxiv. I am all alone, and poor.* Yet no one is indeed richer than such a Man, none more powerful, none more free; who knows how to leave himself and all things, and place himself in the very lowest Place.

C H A P. XII.

Of the King's Highway of the HOLY CROSS.

1. **T**O many this seems a hard Saying, *Deny thyself, take up thy Cross, and follow Jesus,* Matt. xvi. But it will be much harder to hear that last Word, *Go from me you Cursed into everlasting Fire,* Matt. xxv. For
F they

they that at present willingly hear and follow the Word of the Crosse shall not the fear the hearing of eternal Condemnation. This Sign of the Crosse shall be in Heaven when the LORD shall come to judge. Then all the Servants of the Crosse, who in their Lifetime have conformed themselves to him that was crucified, shall come to CHRIST their Judge, with great Confidence.

2. Why then art thou afraid to take up the Crosse, which leads to a Kingdom? In the Crosse is Salvation, in the Crosse is Life, in the Crosse is Protection from thy Enemies, in the Crosse is Infusion of heavenly Sweetness, in the Crosse is Strength of Mind, in the Crosse is Joy of the Spirit, in the Crosse is the Height of Virtue, in the Crosse is the Perfection of Sanctity. There is no Health of the Soul nor Hope of eternal Life, but in the Crosse. Take up therefore thy Crosse, and follow JESUS, and thou shalt go into Life everlasting. He is gone before thee carrying his Crosse, and he died for thee upon the Crosse, that thou mayst also bear thy Crosse, and love to die on the Crosse. Because if thou die with him, thou shalt also live with him; and if thou art his Companion in Suffering, thou shalt also partake in his Glory.

3. Behold in the Crosse is all, and in dying [to thyself] all consists; and there is no other

Way

Chap.
Way to
the W
Mortif
what
higher
than t
order
as seen
somet
lingly
for ei
or ful
4.
other
Neig
often
thou
Com
thou
learn
and
beco
Ma
CH
such
wa
TH
run
ca
fir

Way to Life, and to true internal Peace, but the Way of the holy Cross, and of daily Mortification. Go where thou wilt, seek what thou wilt, and thou shalt not find a higher Way above, nor a safer Way below than the Way of the Holy Cross. Dispose and order all things according as thou wilt, and as seems best to thee; and thou shalt still find something to suffer, either willingly or unwillingly, and so thou shalt still find the Cross; for either thou shalt feel Pain in the Body, or sustain in thy Soul Tribulation of Spirit.

4. Sometimes thou shalt be left by GOD, other times thou shalt be afflicted by thy Neighbour, and what is more, thou shalt often be a Trouble to thyself. Neither canst thou be delivered or eased by any Remedy or Comfort; but as long as it shall please GOD, thou must bear it; for GOD would have thee learn to suffer Tribulation without Comfort, and wholly to submit thyself to him, and to become more humble by Tribulation. No Man hath so lively a feeling of the Passion of CHRIST, as he who hath happened to suffer such like things. The Cross therefore is always ready, and every where waits for thee. Thou canst not escape it, whithersoever thou runnest; for whithersoever thou goest, thou carriest thyself with thee, and shalt always find thyself. Turn thyself upwards or turn

thyself downwards ; turn thyself without, turn thyself within thee ; and every where thou shalt find the Cross. And every where thou must of Necessity have Patience if thou desirest inward Peace, and wouldst merit eternal Crown.

5. If thou carry the Cross willingly, it will carry thee, and bring thee to thy desired End to wit, to that Place where there will be no End of Suffering, tho' here there will be none. If thou carry it unwillingly, thou makest it a Burden to thee, and loadest thyself the more. And nevertheless thou must bear it. If thou fling away one Cross, without doubt thou wilt find another ; and perhaps a heavier.

6. Dost thou think to escape that which no Mortal could ever avoid ? What Saint was there ever in the World without his Cross and Affliction ; Our LORD JESUS CHRIST himself was not one Hour of his Life without Suffering : *It behoved*, saith he, Luke xxii. *That CHRIST should suffer, and rise from the Dead, and so enter into his Glory.* And how dost thou pretend to seek another Way than this Royal Way, which is the Way of the Holy Cross.

7. The whole Life of CHRIST was a Cross, and a Martyrdom ; and dost thou seek Rest and Joy ? Thou erreest, thou erreest, if thou seek any other Thing, than to suffer Tribulations ;

lations; for this whole mortal Life is full of Miseries, and set on all sides with Crosses. And the higher a Person is advanced in Spirit, the heavier Crosses shall he often meet with; because the Pain of his Banishment increases in Proportion to his Love.

8. Yet this Man thus many Ways afflicted is not without some Allay of Comfort for his Ease; because he is sensible of the great Profit which he reaps by bearing the Cross. For whilst he willingly resigns himself to it, all the Burden of Tribulation is converted into an assured Hope of Comfort from God. And the more the Flesh is brought down by Affliction, the more the Spirit is strengthened by inward Grace. And sometimes gains such Force thro' Affection to Tribulation, and Adversity, by reason of loving to be conformable to the Cross of CHRIST, as not to be willing to be without Suffering and Affliction; because such a one believes himself by so much the more acceptable to God, as he shall be able to bear more and greater Things for him. This is not Man's Power, but the Grace of CHRIST, which can and does effect such great Things in frail Flesh, that what it naturally abhors and flies, even this thro' Fervour of Spirit it now embraces and loves.

9. 'Tis not according to Man's natural Inclination to bear the Cross, to love the Cross,

to chastise the Body, and bring it under Subjection; to fly Honours, to be willing to suffer Reproaches, to despise one's self, and wish to be despised; to bear all Adversities and Losses, and to desire no Prosperity in this World. If thou lookest upon thyself, thou canst do nothing of this of thyself. But if thou confidest in the LORD, Strength will be given thee from Heaven, and the World and Flesh shall be made subject to thee. Neither shalt thou fear thine Enemy the Devil, if thou art armed with Faith, and signed with the Cross of CHRIST.

10. Set thyself then like a good and faithful Servant of CHRIST to bear manfully the Cross of thy LORD, crucified for the Love of thee. Prepare thyself to suffer many Adversities, and diverse Evils in this miserable Life, for so it will be with thee, wherever thou art, and so indeed wilt thou find it wheresoever thou hide thyself. It must be so, and there is no Remedy against Tribulation and Sorrow, but to bear them patiently. Drink of the Chalice of thy LORD lovingly, if thou desirest to be his Friend, and to have Part with him. Leave Consolations to GOD, to do with them as best pleaseth him. But set thou thyself to bear Tribulations, and account them the greatest Consolations; For the Sufferings of this Life bear no Proportion with the Glory to come, altho' thou alone couldst suffer them all.

11. When thou shalt arrive thus far, that

Tribulation becomes sweet and savoury to thee for the Love of CHRIST; then think that 'tis well with thee, for thou hast found a Paradise upon Earth. As long as Suffering seems grievous to thee, and thou seekest to fly from it; so long will it be ill with thee, and the Tribulation from which thou fleest will every where follow thee.

12. If thou set thyself to what thou oughtest; that is, to suffer and to die [to thyself] it will quickly be better with thee, and thou shalt find Peace. Altho' thou shouldst have been wrapt up to the third Heaven with St. Paul, thou art not thereby secured, that thou shalt suffer no Adversity. *I (said JESUS, Acts ix.) will shew him how great Things he must suffer for my Name.* To suffer therefore is what waits for thee, if thou wilt love JESUS, and constantly serve him.

13. Would to GOD thou wert worthy to suffer something for the Name of JESUS: How great a Glory would be laid up for thee, how great Joy would it be to all the Saints of GOD, and how great Edification to thy Neighbour? All recommend Patience, but alas, how few are there that desire to suffer! With good Reason oughtest thou willingly to suffer a little for CHRIST, since many suffer greater Things for the World.

14. Know for certain that thou must lead

a dying Life ; and the more a Man dies to himself, the more he begins to live to God. No Man is fit to comprehend heavenly Things, who has not resign'd himself to suffer Adversities for CHRIST. Nothing is more acceptable to God ; nothing more wholesome for thee in this World than to suffer willingly for CHRIST. And if thou wert to chuse, thou oughtest to wish rather to suffer Adversities for CHRIST, than to be delighted with many Comforts ; because thus wouldst thou be more like to CHRIST, and more conformable to the Saints. For our Merit, and the Advancement of our State, consists not in having many Gifts and Consolations, but rather in bearing great Afflictions and Tribulations.

15. If indeed there had been any thing better, and more beneficial to Man's Salvation than Suffering, CHRIST certainly would have shewed it by Word and Example ; for he manifestly exhorts both his Disciples that followed him, and all that desire to follow him to bear the Cross, saying : *If any one will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his Cross and follow me,* St. Luke ix. So that when we have read and searched all, let this be the final Conclusion, that *through many Tribulations we must enter into the Kingdom of God,* Acts xix.

The End of the Second Book.

T H E
Following of CHRIST.

B O O K III.

C H A P. I.

Of the internal Speech of CHRIST to a faithful SOUL.

I Will hear what the LORD GOD speaketh in me, Ps. lxxxiv. Happy is that Soul, which heareth the LORD speaking within her; and from his Mouth receiveth the Word of Comfort. Happy Ears, which receive the Veins of the divine Whisper, and take no notice of the Whisperings of this World. Happy Ears indeed, which hearken to Truth itself teaching within, and not to the Voice which soundeth without. Happy Eyes, which are shut to outward Things, and attentive to the interior. Happy they who penetrate into internal Things, and endeavour to prepare themselves more and more by daily Exercises to the attaining to heavenly Secrets. Happy they who seek to be wholly intent on GOD, and who rid themselves of every worldly Impediment. Mind these things O my Soul, and shut the Doors of thy Sensuality, that thou mayest hear what the LORD thy God speaks within thee.

2. Thus

2. Thus saith thy Beloved : *I am thy Salvation*, thy Peace and thy Life : Keep thyself with me, and thou shalt find Peace. Leave alone all transitory Things, and seek Things eternal. What are all temporal Things but deceit? And what will all things created avail thee, if thou be forsaken by the Creator? Cast off then all earthly Things, and make thyself agreeable to thy Creator and faithful to him, that so thou mayest attain to true Happiness.

C H A P. II.

That TRUTH speaks within us without Noise of WORDS.

1. *SPEAK, LORD, for thy Servant heareth*, I Sam. iii. *I am thy Servant, give me Understanding that I may know thy Testimonies*, Ps. cxviii. Incline my Heart to the Words of thy Mouth ; let thy Speech distill as the Dew. Heretofore the Children of Israel said to *Moses*, *Speak thou to us, and we will hear* : Let not the LORD speak to us, lest we die. Exod. xx. 'Tis not thus, O LORD, 'tis not thus I pray ; but rather with the Prophet *Samuel*, I humbly and earnestly entreat thee, *Speak, LORD, for thy Servant heareth*. Let not *Moses*, nor any of the Prophets speak to me ; but speak thou rather, O LORD GOD, the Inspirer and Enlightner of all the Prophets ; for thou alone without them canst perfectly instruct

in thy Sa-
Keep the
peace. Let
k Thing
things be
s create
Creator
nd mal
d faithf
n to tr

struct me ; but they without thee will avail
ie nothing.

2. They may indeed sound forth Words,
but they give not the Spirit : They speak
well ; but if thou be silent, they don't set the
Heart on Fire : They deliver the Letter, but
thou discloest the Sense : They publish My-
steries, but thou unlockest the Meaning of the
Things signified : They declare the Com-
mandments, but thou enablest to keep them :
They shew the Way, but thou givest Strength
to walk in it : They work only outwardly,
but thou instructest and enlightenest the Heart.
They water exteriorly, but thou givest the
Increase. They cry out with Words, but thou
givest Understanding to the Hearing.

3. Let not then *Moses* speak to me, but
thou, O LORD my GOD, the eternal Truth,
lest I die and prove fruitless, if I be only out-
wardly admonished, and not enkindled with-
in ; lest the Word which I have heard, and
not fulfilled ; which I have known, and not
loved ; which I have believed and not ob-
served, rise up in Judgment against me.
Speak then, O LORD, *for thy Servant hear-*
eth ; for thou hast the Words of eternal Life,
John vi. *Speak*, that it may be for me some
Comfort to my Soul, and for the Amendment
of my whole Life ; and to thy Praise and
Glory, and everlasting Honour.

C H A P. III.

That the WORDS of GOD are to be heard with

HUMILITY, and that many weigh them not

1. **M**Y Son, hear my Words, Words most
sweet, exceeding all the Learning

of Philosophers, and of the wise Men of the

World. My Words are *Spirit* and *Life*, and

not to be estimated by the Sense of Man.

They are not to be drawn to a vain Compe-

cence, but are to be heard in Silence, and to

be received with all Humility and great Affection.

2. And I said, *Blessed is the Man, who*

thou, O LORD, shalt instruct, and shalt teach

him thy Law; that thou mayst give him

from the evil Days; and that he may not

be desolate upon Earth, Ps. xciii.

I (saith the LORD) have taught the Pro-

phets from the Beginning, and even till now.

I cease not to speak to all; but many are deaf

to my Voice, and hard. The greater Number

listen more willingly to the World, than

to GOD; and follow sooner the desires of

Flesh, than the Good-will of GOD.

The World promises Things temporal and of

small Value, and is served with great Eager-

ness: I promise Things most excellent and

everlasting, and Men's Hearts are not moved.

Who is there that serves and obeys me in all

things, with that great Care with which the

World and its Lords are served? *Be ashamed*

O Sion, saith the Sea. And if thou ask why, hear the Reason. For a small Living, Men run a great Way; for eternal Life many will scarce once move a Foot from the Ground. An inconsiderable Gain is sought after; for one Penny sometimes Men shamefully quarrel; they are not afraid to toil Day and Night for a Trifle, or some slight Promise.

4. But, alas! for an unchangeable Good, for an inestimable Reward, for the highest Honour and never ending Glory, they are unwilling to take the least Pains. Be ashamed then, thou slothful Servant, that art so apt to complain, seeing that they are more ready to labour for Death than thou for Life. They rejoice more in running after *Vanity*, than thou in the Pursuit of *Truth*. And indeed they are sometimes frustrated of their Hopes; but my Promise deceives no Man, nor sends away empty him that trusts in me. What I have promised I will give; what I have said, I will make good; provided a Man continue to the end faithful in my Love. I am the Rewarder of all the Good, and the strong Trier of all the Devout.

5. Write my Words in thy Heart, and think diligently on them; for they will be very necessary in the Time of Temptation. What thou understandest not when thou readest, thou shalt know in the Day of Visitation.

I am accustomed to visit my Elect two Manner of Ways, viz. by Trials and by Comforts; and I read them daily two Lessons; one to rebuke their Vices, the other to exhort them to the Increase of Virtues. He that has many Words, and slightes them, has that which shall condemn him at the last Day.

A PRAYER to implore the Grace of Devotion

6. O LORD, my GOD, thou art all Good; and who am I that I should dare speak to thee. I am thy most poor Servant and a wretched little Worm, much more poor and contemptible than I conceive I dare express. Yet remember, O LORD, that I am nothing, I have nothing, and can do nothing: Thou alone art good, just and holy; thou canst do all Things; thou givest all Things; thou fillest all Things, leaving only the Sinner empty. Remember thy tender Mercies, and fill my Heart with thy Grace; thou who wilt not have thy Works to be empty.

7. How can I support myself in this wretched Life, unless thy Mercy and Grace strengthen me? Turn not away thy Face from me; delay not thy Visitation; wither not my Soul; draw not thy Comfort; lest my Soul become as Earth without Water to thee. O LORD, teach me to do thy Will, teach me to converse worthily and humbly in thy Sight; for thou art my Wisdom, who knowest me in

Truth

Truth, and didst know me before the World was made, and before I was born in the World.

C H A P. IV.

That we ought to walk in TRUTH and HUMILITY in GOD'S PRESENCE.

1. SON, walk before me in *Truth*, and always seek me in the Simplicity of thy Heart. He that walks before me in *Truth* shall be secured from evil Occurrences, and *Truth* shall deliver him from Deceivers, and from the Detractions of the Wicked. If *Truth* shall deliver thee, thou shalt be truly free, and shalt make no Account of the vain Words of Men. LORD, this is true : As thou sayest, so I beseech thee, let it be done with me. Let thy *Truth* teach me, let thy *Truth* guard me, and keep me till I come to a happy End. Let the same deliver me from all evil Affections, and all inordinate Love, and I shall walk with thee in great Liberty of Heart.

2. I will teach thee (saith *Truth*) those things which are right and pleasing in my Sight. Think on thy Sins with great Compunction and Sorrow ; and never esteem thyself to be any thing for thy good Works.

Thou art indeed a Sinner, subject to and intangled with many Passions : Of thyself thou always tendest to nothing, thou quickly fallest, thou art quickly overcome, easily dis-

turbed and dissolved : Thou hast not any thing in which thou canst glory, but many things for which thou oughtest to vilify thyself ; for thou art much weaker than thou art able to comprehend.

3. Let nothing then seem much to thee of all thou dost ; let nothing appear greater than nothing valuable or admirable, nothing worthy of esteem ; nothing high, nothing to be praised or praise-worthy or desirable, but what is eternal. Let the *eternal Truth* please thee above all Things, and thy own exceeding great Vileness ever displease thee. Fear nothing so much, blame and abhor nothing so much as thy Vices and Sins, which ought to please thee more than any Losses whatsoever. Some Persons walk not sincerely before me, but being led with a certain Curiosity and Pride, desire to know my Secrets, and to understand the high Things of God, neglecting themselves and their own Salvation. These often fall into great Temptations and Sins through their Pride and Curiosity, because I stand against them.

4. Fear the Judgments of God, dread the Anger of the Almighty ; but pretend not to examine the Works of the Most High, but search into thine own Iniquities, how many Ways thou hast offended, and how much Good thou hast neglected. Some only can

their Devotion in their Books, some in Pictures, and some in outward Signs and Figures: Some have me in their Mouth, but little in their Hearts. There are others, who being enlighten'd in their Understanding, and purified in their Affections, always breathe after things eternal, are unwilling to hear of earthly Things, and grieve to be subject to the necessities of nature; and such as these perceive what the Spirit of *Truth* speaks in them; for it teaches them to despise the Things of the Earth, and to love heavenly Things; to neglect the World, and all the Day and Night to aspire after Heaven.

C H A P. V.

Of the wonderful Effect of his DIVINE LOVE.

I. I BLESS thee, O Heavenly Father, Father of my LORD JESUS CHRIST; because thou hast vouchsafed to be mindful of so poor a Wretch as I am. O Father of Mercies, and GOD of all Comfort, I give Thanks to Thee, who sometimes art pleased to cherish with thy Consolations, me that am unworthy of any Comfort. I bless thee and glorify thee evermore, together with thy only begotten Son, and the Holy Ghost the Comforter, to all Eternity. O LORD GOD, my Holy Lover, when thou shalt come into my Heart, all that is within me will be filled with Joy. Thou art my Glory, and the Joy of my

Heart: Thou art my Hope and my Refuge in the Day of my Tribulation.

2. But because I am as yet weak in Love and imperfect in Virtue; therefore do I stand in need to be strengthen'd and comforted thee. For this Reason visit me often, and instruct me in thy Holy Discipline: Free me from evil Passions, and heal my Heart of disorderly Affections; that being healed and well purged in my Interior, I may become fit to love, courageous to suffer, and constant to persevere.

3. Love is an excellent Thing, a good indeed; which alone maketh light that is burthen some, and equally bears all that is unequal; for it carries a Burthen without being burthen'd, and makes all that which is bitter sweet and savoury. The Love of Jesus is noble and generous, it spurs us on to do good Things, and excites to desire always that which is more perfect. Love will tend upwards, and not be detained by Things beneath. Love will be at Liberty, and free from worldly Affection, lest its interior Sight be hindered, lest it suffer itself to be entangled with any temporal Interest, or cast down by Losses. Nothing is sweeter than Love, nothing stronger, nothing higher, nothing wider, nothing more pleasant, nothing fuller or better in Heaven or Earth: For Love proceeds from

Refuse God, and cannot rest but in GOD, above all things created.

4. The Lover flies, runs, and rejoices; he is free, and is not held: He gives all for all, and has all in all; because he rests in one sovereign *Good* above all, from whom all Good flows and proceeds. He looks not at the Gifts, but turns himself to the Giver, above all Goods. Love often knows no Measure. Love feels no Burthen, values no Labours, would willingly do more than it can; complains not of Impossibility, because it conceives that it may and can do all things. It is able therefore to do any thing, and it performs and effects many things, where he that loves not faints and lies down.

5. Love watches, and sleeping slumbers not; when weary, is not tired; when streightened, is not constrained; when frightened, is not disturbed; but like a lively Flame, and a Torch all on Fire, mounts upwards, and securely passeth thro' all Opposition. Whosoever loves knows the Cry of this Voice. A loud Cry in the Ears of GOD is the ardent Affection of the Soul, which saith; O my GOD, my Love; thou art all mine, and I am all thine.

6. Give Increase to my Love, that I may learn to taste with the interior Mouth of the Heart how sweet it is to love, and to swim, and to be melted in Love: Let me be possessed by Love, going above myself through

Excess of Fervour and Amazement. Let me sing the Canticle of Love, let me follow thee my Beloved on High, let my Soul lose herself in thy Praises, rejoicing exceedingly in Love. Let me love thee more than myself and myself only for thee ; and all others for thee, who truly love thee, as the Law of Love commands, which shines forth from thee.

7. Love is swift, sincere, pious, pleasant and delightful ; strong, patient, faithful, patient, long-suffering, courageous, and never seeking itself ; for where a Man seeks himself there he falls from Love. Love is circumspect, humble and upright, not soft, not light nor intent upon vain things ; is sober, chaste, stable, quiet, and keeps a guard over all the Senses. Love is submissive and obedient to Superiors, in its own Eyes mean and contemptible, devout and thankful to God, always trusting and hoping in him, even when it tastes not the Relish of God's Sweetness ; for there is no living in Love without some Pain or Sorrow.

8. Whosoever is not ready to suffer for Things, and to stand resigned to the Will of his Beloved, is not worthy to be called a Lover. He that loves must willingly embrace all that is hard and bitter for the Sake of his Beloved, and never suffer himself to be turned away from him by any contrary Occurrences whatsoever.

CHAP

Chap. 6.

Of
MY
an
Because th
begun, up
and too g
A valiant
tations, a
Persuasion
with me
when I se
2. A p
the Gift
Giver :
than the
all his G
in the G
is not lo
feeling [
Saints, w
and delig
perceives
a certain
But thou
cause it
the evil
and to c
is a Sig
3. L

C H A P. VI.

Of the Proof of a true LOVER.

MY Son, thou art not as yet a valiant and prudent Lover. Why, O LORD? Because thou fallest off from what thou hast begun, upon meeting with a little Adversity, and too greedily seekest after Consolation. A valiant Lover stands his ground in Temptations, and gives no Credit to the crafty Persuasions of the Enemy. As he is pleased with me in Prosperity, so I displease him not when I send Adversity.

2. A prudent Lover considers not so much the Gift of the Lover, as the Love of the Giver: He looks more at the Good-will than the Value, and sets his Beloved above all his Gifts. A generous Lover rests not in the Gift, but in me above every Gift. All is not lost, if sometimes thou hast not that feeling [of Devotion] towards me or my Saints, which thou wouldst have. That good and delightful affection, which thou sometimes perceivest, is the Effect of present Grace, and a certain Foretaste of thy heavenly Country: But thou must not rely too much upon it, because it goes and comes: But to fight against the evil Motions of the Mind which arise, and to despise the Suggestions of the Devil, is a Sign of Virtue, and of great Merit.

3. Let not therefore strange Fancies trouble

ble thee of what Subject soever they be that are suggested to thee. Keep thy Resolution firm, and thy Intention upright towards God. Neither is it an Illusion, that sometimes thou art wrapt into an Ecstasy, and presently turnest to the accustomed Fooleries of thy Heart. For these thou rather sufferest against thy Will, than procurest; and as long as thou art displeased with them, and resistest them, it is Merit and not Loss.

4. Know, that the old Enemy strives by all Means to hinder thy Desire after God, and to divert thee from every devout Exercise; namely from the Veneration of Saints, from the pious Meditation of the Passion, from the profitable Remembrance of thy Sins, from keeping a Guard upon thy own Heart, and from a firm Purpose of advancing in Virtue. He suggests to thee many evil Thoughts, that he may tire thee and frighten thee; that he may withdraw thee from prayer, and the reading of devout Books. He is displeased with humble Confession: And, if he could, he would cause thee to let alone Communion. Give no credit to him, value him not, altho' he often lay many deceitful Snares in thy Way. Charge him with it, when he suggests wicked and unclean Things; and say to him; Be gone unclean Spirit; be ashamed miserable Wretch, thou art very filthy indeed to suggest such

Things as thou wilt. Share in me as a stand corner. I undergo and sent to thee, of thee, some to

Salvation should fear.

Redeemed

5. Fi

times t

with gr

in my r

care th

and Pr

Error,

able B

who fo

thee fo

humbl

That

1. M

votio

Things as these to me. Depart from me, thou wicked Impostor ; thou shalt have no share in me ; but my JESUS will be with me as a valiant Warrior, and thou shalt stand confounded. I had rather die, and undergo any Torment whatsoever, than consent to thee. Be silent, I will hear no more of thee, altho' thou often strive to be troublesome to me. *The LORD is my Light, and my Salvation ; whom shall I fear ? If whole Armies should stand together against me, my Heart shall not fear. The LORD is my Helper, and my Redeemer, Ps. cvi.*

5. Fight like a good Soldier ; and if sometimes thou fall thro' Frailty, rise up again with greater Strength than before, confiding in my more abundant Grace. But take great care thou yield not to any vain Complacency and Pride. Through this many are led into Error, and sometimes fall into almost incurable Blindness. Let this Fall of the Proud, who foolishly presume of themselves, serve thee for a Warning, and keep thee always humble.

C H A P. VII.

That GRACE is to be hid under the Guardianship of HUMILITY.

1. **M**Y Son, it is more profitable and more safe for thee to hide the Grace of Devotion, and not to be elevated with it, not
to

to speak much of it, not to consider it much, but rather to despise thyself the more, and be afraid of it, as given to one unworthy. Thou must not depend too much on this Affection, which may be quickly changed in the Contrary. When thou hast Grace, think with thyself how miserable and poor thou art, when thou art without it. Note the Progress of a spiritual Life consists so much in having the Grace of Consolation as in bearing the Want of it with Humiliation, Resignation and Patience; so as not to grow remiss in thy Exercise of Prayer at that time, nor to suffer thyself to omit any of thy accustomed Good-works: But that thou willingly do what lies in thee, according to the best of thy Ability and Understanding; and take care not wholly to neglect thyself through the Driness or Anxiety of Mind which thou feelest.

2. For there are many, who when it succeeds not well with them, presently grow impatient or slothful. Now the *Way of Man* is not always in his own Power; but it belongs to GOD to give, and to comfort when he will, and as much as he will, and whom he will, as it shall please him, and no more. Some wanting Discretion have ruined themselves upon Occasion of the Grace of Devotion; because they were for doing more than they could, not weighing well the Measure

of their own Weakness, but following rather the Inclination of the Heart than the Judgment of Reason. And because they presumptuously undertook greater Things than were pleasing to GOD, therefore they quickly lost his Grace : They became needy, and were left in a wretched Condition, who had built themselves a Nest in Heaven ; to the end, that being thus humbled and impoverished, they may learn not to trust to their own Wings, but to hide themselves under mine. Those who are as yet but Novices and unexperienced in the Way of the LORD, if they will not govern themselves by the Counsel of the Discreet, will easily be deceived and overthrown.

3. And if they will rather follow their own Judgment than believe others who have more Experience, they will be in Danger of coming off ill if they continue to refuse to lay down their own Conceits. They that are wise in their own Eyes seldom humbly suffer themselves to be ruled by others. 'Tis better to have little Knowledge with Humility, and a weak Understanding, than greater Treasures of Learning with a vain Self-complacence. 'Tis better for thee to have less than much, which may puff thee up with Pride. He is not so discreet as he ought, who gives himself up wholly to Joy, forgetting his former Poverty, and the chaste Fear of GOD, which apprehends the losing

of that Grace which is offered. Neither he so virtuously wise, who in the Time of Adversity, or any Tribulation whatsoever carries himself in a desponding Way, and conceives and feels less Confidence in me than he ought.

4. He, who is too secure in the Time of Peace, will often be found too much distressed and fearful in the Time of War. If thou couldst but always continue humble and lowly in thy own Eyes, and keep thy Spirit in due Order and Subjection, thou wouldst not fall so easily into Danger and Offence. 'Tis a good Counsel, that when thou hast received the Spirit of Fervour, thou shouldst meditate how it will be with thee when the Light shall leave thee; which when it shall happen, remember that the Light may turn again, which for a Caution to thee, and for my Glory, I have withdrawn from thee for a Time.

5. Such a Trial is oftentimes more profitable, than if thou wert always to have Prosperity according to thy Will. For a Man's Merits are not to be estimated by his having many Visions or Consolations; or by his Knowledge in Scriptures, or by his being placed in a more elevated Station; but by his being grounded in true Humility, and replenished with Divine Charity: By his seeking always purely and entirely the Honour

GOD ; by his esteeming himself to be nothing, and sincerely despising himself ; and being better pleased to be despised and humbled by others, than to be honoured by them.

C H A P. VIII.

Of the mean ESTEEM of one's self in the SIGHT of GOD.

1. *I Will speak to my LORD, I that am but Dust and Ashes, Gen. xviii.* If I think any thing better of myself, behold thou standest against me ; and my Sins bear Witness to the Truth, and I cannot contradict it. But if I vilify myself, and acknowledge my own nothing, and cast away all Manner of Esteem of myself ; and, as I really am, account myself to be mere Dust, thy Grace will be favourable to me, and thy Light will draw nigh to my Heart, and all Self-Esteem, how small soever will be sunk in the Depth of my own Nothingness, and there lose itself for ever. 'Tis there thou shewest me to myself, what I am, what I have been, and what I am to come to : For I am nothing and I knew it not. If I am left to myself, behold I am nothing, and all Weakness ; but if thou suddenly look upon me, I presently become strong and am filled with a new Joy. And it is very wonderful that I am so quickly raised up, and so graciously embraced by thee ; I, who by my own Weight am always sinking to the Bottom.

2. 'Tis

2. 'Tis thy Love that effects this, free preventing me, and assisting me in so many Necessities; preserving me also from grievous Dangers, and, as I may truly say, delivering me from innumerable Evils. For by an evil loving of myself, I lost myself; and by seeking thee alone and purely loving thee, I found both myself and thee, and by this Love have more profoundly annihilated myself. Because thou, O most sweet LORD, dost deal with me above all Desert, and above all that I dare hope or ask for.

3. Blessed be thou, O my GOD; for thou I am unworthy of all Good, yet thy Generosity and infinite Goodness never ceaseth to do Good even to those that are ungrateful, and that are turned away from thee. O convert us to thee, that we may be thankful, humble, and devout; for thou art our Salvation, our Power and our Strength.

C H A P. IX.

That all THINGS are to be referred to GOD as to our last END.

1. **M**Y Son, I must be thy chief, and last End, if thou desirest to be truly happy. By this Intention shall thy Affection be purified, which too often is irregularly bent upon thyself, and Things created: For if in any thing thou seek thyself, thou presently faintest away within thyself, and growest dry.

Refer therefore all things principally to me, for it is I that have given thee all. Consider every thing as flowing from the sovereign Good; and therefore they must all be returned to me as to their Origin.

2. Out of me both little and great, poor and rich, as out of a living Fountain, draw living Water; and they that freely and willingly serve me shall receive *Grace for Grace*. But he that would glory in any thing else besides me, or delight in any good as his own [not referred to me] shall not be established in true Joy, nor enlarged in his Heart, but in many Kinds shall meet with Hindrances and Anguish; therefore thou must not ascribe any thing of Good to thyself, nor attribute Virtue to any Man; but give all to GOD, without whom Man has nothing. I have given all, I will have all returned to me again, and I very strictly require Thanks for all that I give.

3. This is that *Truth*, by which all *vain Glory* is put to flight: And if heavenly Grace and true Charity come in, there shall be no Envy nor Narrowness of Heart, nor shall Self love keep its Hold: for Divine Charity overcomes all, and dilates all the Forces of the Soul. If thou art truly wise, thou wilt rejoice in me alone, thou wilt hope in me alone: For *none is good but GOD alone*, Luke xviii. Who is to be praised above all, and to be blessed in all.

CHAP.

C H A P. X.

That it is sweet to serve GOD, despising the
WORLD.

1. **N**OW will I speak, O LORD, and will not be silent; I will say in the hearing of my GOD, my LORD, and my King that is on high, *O how great is the Multitude of thy Sweetness, O LORD, which thou hast hid* *hidden for those that fear thee!* Ps. xiii. What art thou to those that love thee? What to those that serve thee with their whole Heart? Unspeakable indeed is the Sweetness of Contemplation, which thou bestowest on those that love thee. In this, most of all hast thou shewed me the Sweetness of thy Love, that when I had no Being, thou hast made me; and when I strayed far from thee, thou hast brought me back again, that I might serve thee; and thou hast commanded me to *love* thee.

2. O Fountain of everlasting Love, what shall I say of thee? How can I ever forget thee, who hast vouchsafed to remember me even after that I was corrupted, and was lost? Thou hast beyond all hope shewed Mercy to thy Servant; and beyond all my Desert bestowed thy Grace and Friendship on me. What Return shall I make to thee for this Grace? For 'tis a Favour not granted to all, to forsake all things and renounce the World, and chuse a monastick Life. Can it be much to serve thee, whom the whole Creation

bound to serve? It ought not to seem much to me to serve thee; but this seems rather great and wonderful to me, that thou vouchsafest to receive one so wretched and unworthy into thy Service, and to associate him to thy beloved Servants.

3. Behold all things are thine, which I have, and with which I serve thee; tho' rather thou serveest me, than I thee. Lo! Heaven and Earth, which thou hast created for the Service of Man, are ready at thy Beck, and daily do whatever thou hast commanded them. And this is yet but little, for thou hast also appointed the Angels for the Service of Man. But what is above all this is, that thou thyself hast vouchsafed to serve Man, and hast promised that thou wilt give him thyself.

4. What shall I give thee for all these Thousands of Favours? Oh that I could serve thee all the Days of my Life! Oh that I were able, if it were but for one Day to serve thee worthily! Indeed thou art worthy of all Service, of all Honour, and of eternal Praise. Thou art truly my Lord, and I am thy poor Servant, who am bound with all my Strength to serve thee, and ought never to grow weary of praising thee. This is my Will, this is my Desire; and whatever is wanting to me, do thou vouchsafe to supply.

5. 'Tis a great Honour, a great Glory, to serve

serve thee, and to despise all things for thee; for they who willingly subject themselves to thy most holy Service shall have a great Grace: They shall find the most sweet Consolation of the Holy Ghost, who for the Love of thee have cast away all carnal Delights. They shall gain great Freedom of Mind, when for thy Name enter upon the narrow Way, and neglect all worldly Care.

6. Oh pleasant and delightful Service of GOD, which makes a Man truly free and holy! Oh sacred State of religious Bondage, which makes Man equal to Angels, pleasing to GOD, terrible to the Devils, and commendable to all the Faithful! Oh Service worthy to be embraced and always withstood for, which leads to the supreme Good, and procures a Joy that will never end.

C H A P. XI.

That the DESIRES of our HEART are to be examined and moderated.

1. **S**ON, thou hast many things still to learn, which thou hast not yet well learned. What are these things, O LORD? That thou conform in all things thy Desires to my good Pleasure, and that thou be not a Lover of thyself, but earnestly zealous that my Will may be done. Desires often inflame thee, and violently hurry thee on; but consider whether it be for my Honour or thy own Interest that thou art more moved.

thou hast no other View but me, thou wilt be well contented with whatever I shall ordain; but if there lurk in thee any thing of self-seeking, behold this is it that hinders thee, and troubles thee.

2. Take care then not to rely too much upon any Desire which thou hast conceived before thou hast consulted me, lest afterwards thou repent, or be displeased with that which before pleased thee, and which thou zealously desiredst as the best. For every Affection [or Inclination] which appears good, is not presently to be followed, nor every contrary Affection at the first to be rejected. Even in good Desires and Inclinations, 'tis expedient sometimes to use some Restraint lest by too much Eagerness, thou incur Distraction of Mind; lest thou create Scandal to others, by not keeping within Discipline; or by the Opposition which thou mayst meet with from others, thou be suddenly disturbed and fall.

3. Yet in some Cases we must use Violence, and manfully resist the sensual Appetite, and not regard what the Flesh has a Mind for, or what it would fly from; but rather labour that, whether it will or no, it may become subject to the Spirit. And so long must it be chastised, and kept under Servitude, 'till it readily obey in all things, and learn to be content with a little, and to be

be pleased with what is plain and ordinary
and not to murmur at any Inconvenience

C H A P. XII.

*Of learning PATIENCE, and of fighting
gainst CONCUPISCENCE.*

1. **O** LORD GOD, Patience, as I perceive
is very necessary for me ; this Life
exposed to many Adversities : For how
ever I propose for my Peace, my Life
not be without War and Sorrow.

2. So it is, Son ; but I would not
thee seek for such a Peace as to be without
Temptations, or meet with no Adversities.
But even then to think thou hast found Peace
when thou shalt be exercised with divers
Tribulations, and tried in many Adversities.
If thou shalt say, thou art not able to suffer
so much, how then wilt thou endure the
of Purgatory ? Of two Evils one ought
ways to chuse the least : That thou mayest
therefore escape the everlasting Punishment
to come, labour to endure present Evils with
Patience for God's Sake. Dost thou think
the Men of this World suffer little or nothing
Thou shalt not find it so, tho' thou seek
for the most delicate.

3. But, thou wilt say they have many Delights,
lights, and follow their own Wills ; and therefore
make small account of their Tribulations.

4. Suppose it to be so, that they have
they desire ; how long dost thou think

will last? Behold, they shall vanish away like smoke that abound in this World, and there shall be no Remembrance of their past Joys. Nay, even whilst they are living, they rest not in them, without Bitterness, Irksomeness, and Fear. For the very same Thing, in which they conceive a Delight, doth often bring upon them the Punishment of Sorrow. 'Tis just it should be so with them, that since they inordinately seek and follow their Pleasures, they should not satisfy them without Confusion and Uneasiness. Oh! how short, how deceitful, how inordinate and filthy are all these Pleasures! Yet through Sottishness and Blindness Men understand this not; but like brute Beasts, for a small Pleasure in this mortal Life, they incur the eternal Death of their Souls. But thou, my Son, *Go not after thy Concupiscences, but turn away from thy own Will, Eccclus. xviii. Delight in the LORD, and he will give thee the Requests of thy Heart, Ps. xxxvi.*

5. For if thou wilt be delighted in Truth, and receive more abundant Consolation from me, behold it is in the Contempt of all worldly Things; and the renouncing all those mean Pleasures shall be thy Blessing, and an exceeding great Comfort to thy Soul. And the more thou withdrawest thyself from all Comfort from Things created, the more
sweet

sweet and the more powerful Consolation shalt thou find in me. But thou shalt not first attain to these without some Sorrow and Labour in the Conflict. The old Custom will stand in thy Way, but by a better Custom it shall be overcome : The Flesh will complain, but by the Fervour of the Spirit it shall be kept under. The old Serpent will tempt thee and give thee Trouble ; but by Prayer he shall be put to flight : Moreover by keeping thyself always employ'd in some useful Labour, his Access to thee shall be a great measure stopt up.

C H A P. XIII.

Of the Obedience of an humble SUBJECT after the EXAMPLE of JESUS CHRIST.

1. **S**ON, he who strives to withdraw himself from Obedience, withdraws himself from Grace ; and he that seeks to have Things for his own Particular, loses such as are common. If a Man doth not freely and willingly submit himself to his Superior, it is a Sign that his Flesh is not as yet perfectly obedient to him ; but oftentimes rebels and murmurs. Learn then to submit thyself readily to thy Superior, if thou desire to subdue thy own Flesh ; for the Enemy within is sooner overcome, if the inward Man be not laid waste. There is no more trouble from some or worse Enemy to the Soul than thou art to thyself, not agreeing well with the

Spirit. Thou must in good earnest conceive a true Contempt of thyself, if thou wilt prevail over Flesh and Blood. Because thou hast yet too inordinate a Love for thyself, therefore art thou afraid to resign thyself wholly to the Will of others.

2. But what great Matter is it, if thou, who art but Dust and a meer Nothing submittest thyself for GOD's Sake to Man; when I the *Almighty*, and the *Most High*, who created all Things out of nothing, have for thy Sake humbly subjected myself to Man. I became the most humble and most abject of all Men, that thou mightst overcome thy Pride by my Humility. Learn, O Dust, to obey, learn to humble thyself, thou that art but Dirt and Mire, and to cast thyself down under the Feet of all Men: Learn to break thy own Will, and to yield thyself up to all Subjection.

3. Conceive an Indignation against thyself, suffer not the swelling of Pride to live in thee; but make thyself so submissive and little, that all may trample on thee, and tread thee under their Feet, as the Dirt of the Streets. What hast thou, vain Man, to complain of? What Answer canst thou make, O filthy Sinner, to those that reproach thee, thou that hast so often offended GOD, and many times deserved Hell? But

H

mine

mine Eye hath spared thee, because thy Soul was precious in my Sight, that thou mightest know my Love and mightst be always thankful for my Favour, and that thou mightest give thyself continually to true Subjection and Humility, and bear with Patience to be despised by all.

C H A P. XIV.

Of considering the secret JUDGMENTS of God lest we be puffed up by our GOOD-WORKS

1. **T**HOU thunderest forth over my Head by thy Judgments, O LORD, and thou shakest all my Bones with Fear and Trembling, and my Soul is terrified exceedingly. I stand astonished, and consider that the *Heavens are not pure in thy Sight*. If in the Angels thou hast found Sin, and hast spared them, what will become of men? Stars have fallen from Heaven, and I am but Dust how can I presume? Thou whose Works seemed praise-worthy, hast fallen to the very lowest; and such as before fed upon the Bread of Angels, I have seen delighted with the Husks of Swine.

2. There is then no Sanctity, if thou, O LORD, withdraw thy Hand: No Wisdom avails, if thou cease to govern us: No Strength is of any Help, if thou support us not: No Chastity is secure without thy Protection: No Guard that we can keep upon ourselves profits us, if thy holy Watchful

we be not with us ; for if we are left to ourselves, we sink and we perish ; but if thou visit us, we are raised up and we live. For we are unsettled, but by thee we are strengthened : We are tepid, but by thee we are enflamed.

3. O how humbly and lowly ought I to think of myself ! How little ought I to esteem whatever Good I may seem to have ? Oh ! how low ought I to cast myself down under the Bottomless Depth of thy Judgments, O LORD ; where I find myself to be *nothing* else but *nothing* ? Oh ! Immense Weight ! Oh ! Sea, that cannot be passed over, where I find nothing of myself but just nothing at all ! Where then can there be any lurking Hole for glorying in myself ? Where any Confidence in any Conceit of my own Virtue ? All Vain-glory is swallowed up in the Depth of thy Judgments over me.

4. What is all Flesh in thy Sight ? shall the Clay glory against him that formed it ? How can he be puffed up with the vain Talk of Man, whose Heart in *Truth* is subjected to GOD. All the World will not lift him up, whom *Truth* hath subjected to itself ; neither will he be moved with the Tongues of all that praise him, who hath settled his whole Hope in GOD. For behold, they also that speak are all *nothing*,

for they shall pass away with the Sound
their Words; but *the Truth of the Lord*
remaineth for ever. Ps. cxvi.

C H A P. XV.

How we are to be DISPOSED, *and what*
are to say when we desire ANY THING.

1. **M**Y Son, say thus in every Occasion
LORD, if it be pleasing to thee,
this be done in this Manner. LORD, if it
to thy Honour, let this be done in thy Name.
LORD, if thou see'st that this is expedient
and approve'st it as profitable for me, thou
grant that I may use it to thy Honour;
if thou knowest that it will be hurtful to me
and not expedient for the Salvation of my
Soul, take away from me such a Desire.
For every Desire is not from the Holy Ghost,
tho' it seem to a Man right and good: And
it is hard to judge truly, whether it be
good or bad Spirit that pushes thee on to
desire this or that, or whether thou art
moved to it by thy own Spirit. Many
the End have been deceived, who at first
seem'd to be led by a good Spirit.

2. Whatsoever therefore presents itself
to thy Mind as worthy to be desired, see that
it be always with the Fear of GOD, and Humili-
tude of Heart that thou desire or ask for
it; and above all, thou ought'st with a Resig-
nation of thyself to commit it all to me.

and to say, O LORD, thou knowest what is best; let this or that be done as thou wilt. Give what thou wilt, how much thou wilt, and at what Time thou wilt. Do with me as thou knowest, and as best pleaseth thee, and is most for thy Honour. Put me where thou wilt, and do with me in all things according to thy Will. I am in thy Hand, turn me round which Way thou wilt. Lo, I am thy Servant, ready to obey thee in all things; for I don't desire to live for myself, but for thee: I wish it may be perfectly and worthily.

A PRAYER for the fulfilling the Will of GOD.

3. Grant me thy Grace, most merciful JESUS, that it may be with me, and may labour with me, and continue with me to the End. Grant me always to will and desire that which is most acceptable to thee, and which pleaseth thee best. Let thy Will be mine, and let my Will always follow thine, and agree perfectly with it. Let me always will or not will the same with thee; and let me not be able to will or not will any otherwise than as thou willest or willest not.

4. Grant that I may die to all things that are in the World; and for thy Sake love to be despised, and not to be known in this World. Grant that I may rest in thee above all things desired, and that my Heart

may be at Peace in thee. Thou art the true
 Peace of the Heart, thou art its only Rest
 out of thee all things are hard and uneasy
In this Peace, in the self same (that is,
 Thee, the one sovereign eternal Good)
will sleep and take my Rest, Ps. iv. *Amen.*

C H A P. XVI.

That true COMFORT is to be sought in God
alone.

1. **W**HATSOEVER I can desire
 imagine for my Comfort, I let
 not for it in this Life, but hereafter : For
 if I alone should have all the Comforts
 this World, and might enjoy all its Delights
 it is certain they could not last long. Where-
 fore thou canst not, O my Soul, be fully
 comforted, nor perfectly delighted, but
 God, the Comforter of the Poor, and the
 Support of the Humble. Expect a little
 while, my Soul, wait for the Divine Pro-
 mise, and thou shalt have Plenty of all that
 is good in Heaven. If thou desirest too
 inordinately these present Things, thou wilt
 lose those that are heavenly and everlasting.
 Let temporal Things serve thy Use, but thy
 eternal be the Object of thy Desire. Thou
 canst not be fully satisfied with any tempo-
 ral Good, because thou wast not created for
 the Enjoyment of such Things.

2. Although

2. Although thou shouldst have all created Goods, yet this could not make thee happy and blessed : But in GOD, who created all Things, all thy Beatitude and Happiness consists. Not such a Happiness as is seen or cried up by the foolish Admirers of this World, but such as good Christians look for, and of which they that are spiritual and clean of Heart, whose Conversation is in Heaven, have sometimes a foretaste : All human Comfort is vain and short. Blessed and true is that Comfort which is inwardly received from *Truth*. A devout Man always carrieth about with him JESUS his Comforter, and saith to him, be with me, O LORD JESUS, in all Places, and at all Times. Let this be my Consolation, to be willing to want all human Comfort. And if thy Comfort also be withdrawn, let thy Will and just Appointment for my Trial be to me as the greatest of Comforts : For *thou wilt not be angry always, neither wilt thou threaten for ever*, Ps. cii.

C H A P. XVII.

That we ought to cast all our CARE upon GOD.

1. SON, suffer me to do with thee what I will : I know what is best for thee ; thou thinkest as Man ; thou judgest in many things as human Affection suggests. LORD, what

what thou sayest is true, thy Care over me is greater than all the Care I can take of myself. For he stands at too great a Hazard that does not cast his whole Care on thee. LORD, provided that my Will remain but right and firm toward thee, do with me whatsoever it shall please thee ; for it cannot but be good whatever thou shalt do by me.

2. If thou wilt have me to be in Darkness, be thou blessed ; and if thou wilt have me to be in Light, be thou again blessed. If thou vouchsafe to comfort me, be thou blessed : And if it be thy Will I should be afflicted, be thou always equally blessed.

3. Son, it is in this Manner thou must stand affected, if thou desire to walk with me. Thou must be as ready to suffer as to rejoice ; thou must be as willing to be poor and needy, as to be full and rich.

4. LORD, I will suffer willingly for Thee whatsoever thou art pleased should befall me, I will receive with Indifference from thy Hand good and evil, sweet and bitter, joyful and sorrowful ; and will give Thee Thanks for all that happens to me. Keep me only from all Sin, and I will fear neither Death nor Hell. Cast me not off for ever, nor blot me out of the Book of Life ; and what Tribulations soever befall me shall not hurt me.

C H A P.

C H A P. XVIII.

That temporal Miseries are to be borne with Patience after the Example of JESUS CHRIST.

1. SON, I came down from Heaven for thy Salvation, I took upon me thy Miseries, not of Necessity, but moved thereby by Charity, that thou mightest learn Patience, and mightest bear without repining, the Miseries of this Life ; for from the Hour of my Birth, till my expiring on the Cross, I was never without suffering. I underwent great want of temporal Things ; I frequently heard many Complaints against me ; I meekly bore with Confusions and Reproaches : For my Benefits I received Ingratitude ; for my Miracles, Blasphemies ; and for my heavenly Doctrine, Reproaches.

2. LORD, because thou wast patient in thy Life-time, in this chiefly fulfilling the Commandment of thy Father, it is fitting that I a wretched Sinner should, according to thy Will, take all with Patience ; and as long as thou pleasest, support the Burden of this corruptible Life, in order to my Salvation. For tho' this present Life be burthensome, yet it is now become through thy Grace very meritorious ; and by the help of thy Example, and the Footsteps of thy Saints more supportable to the Weak, and more lightsome. It is also much more comfortable, than it was formerly under the Old

Law, when the Gate of Heaven remained shut; and the Way to Heaven seem'd more obscure, when so few concern'd themselves to seek the Kingdom of Heaven. Neither could they who were then just and to be sav'd, enter into thy heavenly Kingdom, before thy Passion, and the Payment of our Debt by thy sacred Death.

3. Oh! how great Thanks am I oblig'd to return thee, for having vouchsafed to shew me and all the Faithful, a right and good Way to an everlasting Kingdom! For thy Life is our Way; and by holy Patience we walk on to thee, who art our Crown. If thou hadst not gone before and instructed us, who would have cared to have followed? Alas! How many would have staid afar off, and a great Way behind, if they had not before their Eyes thy excellent Example! Behold we are still tepid, notwithstanding all thy Miracles and Instructions which we have heard: What then would it have been, if we had not this great Light to follow thee?

C H A P. XIX.

Of supporting INJURIES; and who is prov'd to be truly patient.

1. **W**HAT is it thou sayest, my Son? Cease to complain, considering my Passion, and that of other Saints: Thou hast not yet resisted unto Blood. What thou sufferest is but little, in Comparison of them

who have suffer'd so much ; who have been strongly tempted, so grievously afflicted, many ways tried and exercis'd. Thou must then call to mind the heavy Sufferings of others, that thou mayst the easier bear the little things thou sufferest : And if to thee they seem not little, take heed lest this do proceed from thy Impatience. But whether they be little or great, strive to bear them all with Patience.

2. The better thou dispos'st thyself to suffering, the more wisely dost thou act, and the more dost thou merit ; and thou wilt bear it more easily, thy Mind being well prepared for it, and accustomed to it. Don't say, I cannot take these Things from such a Man, and Things of this kind are not to be suffered by me, for he has done me a great Injury, and he upbraids me with Things I never thought on ; but I will suffer willingly from another, and as far as I shall judge fitting for me to suffer. Such a Thought is foolish, which considers not the Virtue of Patience, nor by whom it shall be crown'd ; but rather weighs the Persons, and the Offences committed.

3. He is not a true Patient Man, who will suffer no more than he thinks good, and from whom he pleaseth. The true patient Man minds not by whom it is he is exercis'd, whether by his Superior, or by one of his Equals, or by an Inferior ; whether by a good

and holy Man, or by one that is perverse and unworthy. But how much soever, and how often soever any Adversity happens to him from any thing created, he takes it all with Equality of Mind as from the Hand of God with Thanksgiving, and esteems it a great Gain: For nothing, how little soever, that is suffer'd for GOD's Sake, can pass without Merit in the Sight of GOD.

4. Be thou therefore ready prepared to fight, if thou desirest to gain the Victory. Without Fighting thou canst not obtain the Crown of Patience: If thou wilt not suffer, thou refusest to be crown'd; but if thou desirest to be crown'd, fight manfully, and endure patiently: Without Labour there is no coming to Rest, nor without Fighting can the Victory be obtained: May thy Grace, O LORD, make that possible to me, which seems impossible to me by Nature. Thou knowest that I can bear but little, and that I am quickly cast down by a small Adversity. Let all Exercises of Tribulation become agreeable and agreeable to me for thy Name's Sake; for to suffer and to be afflicted for thee is very healthful for my Soul.

C H A P. XX.

Of the Confession of our own INFIRMITY, and of the Miseries of this LIFE.

1. **I** Will confess against myself my Injustices, Psalm xxxi. I will confess to Thee, O

LORD, my Infirmary. It is oftentimes a small Thing which casts me down and troubles me. I make a Resolution to behave myself valiantly : but when a small Temptation comes, I am brought into great Streights. 'Tis sometimes a very trifling Thing, from whence a grievous Temptation proceeds. And when I think myself somewhat safe, I find myself sometimes, when I least apprehend it, almost overcome with a small Blast.

2. Behold then, O LORD, my Abjection and Frailty every Way known to thee. Have Pity on me, and draw me out of the Mire, that I stick not fast therein, that I may not be utterly cast down for ever. This it is which often drives me back, and confounds me in thy Sight, to find that I am so subject to fall and have so little Strength to resist my Passions. And altho' I don't altogether consent, yet their Assaults are troublesome and grievous to me; and it is exceeding irksome to live thus always in a Conflict. From hence my Infirmary is made known to me; because wicked Thoughts do always much more easily rush in upon me, than they can be cast out again.

3. Oh! that thou the most mighty God of *Israel*, the zealous Lover of faithful Souls, wouldst behold the Labour and Sorrow of thy Servant, and stand by me in all my Undertakings. Strengthen me with heavenly Fortitude,

itude, lest the old Man, the miserable Flesh not yet fully subject to the Spirit, prevail and get the upper hand; against which we must fight as long as we breathe in this most wretched Life. Alas! what Kind of Life is this, where Afflictions and Miseries are never wanting, where all things are full of Snares and Enemies? For when one Tribulation or Temptation is gone, another cometh; yea, and whilst the first Conflict still lasts, many others come on, and those unexpected.

4. And how can a Life be loved that hath so great Bitternesses, that is subject to so many Calamities and Miseries? And how can it be called Life, since it begets so many Deaths and Plagues? And yet it is loved, and many seek their Delight in it. Many blame the World that it is deceitful and vain, and yet they are not willing to quit it, because the Concupiscences of the Flesh too much prevail. But there are some Things that draw them to love the World, others to despise it; the Lust of the Flesh, the Lust of the Eyes, and Pride of Life draw to the Love of the World; but the Pains and Miseries which justly follow these Things breed a Hatred and Loathing of the World.

5. But alas! the Pleasure of Sin prevails over the worldly Soul, and under these Thorns she imagines there are Delights; because she has neither seen nor tasted the Sweetness of

Chap.

GOD,
But the
study to
experie
nised to
y see h
and how

That w

A

LORD,
Give n
to repo
bove a
y and
above
Riches
above
ness an
mise, a
Gifts a
fuse, al
can co
and A
above
bove a

2.

best a

GOD, nor the internal Pleasure of Virtue. But they that perfectly despise the World, and study to live to GOD under holy Discipline, experience the Divine Sweetness, that is promised to those who forsake all; and such clearly see how grievously the World is mistaken, and how many Ways it is imposed upon.

C H A P. XXI.

That we are to rest in GOD above all GOODS and GIFTS.

1. **A**BOVE all things, and in all things, do thou my Soul rest always in the LORD, for he is the eternal Rest of the Saints. Give me, O most sweet and loving JESUS, to repose in thee above all things created, above all Health and Beauty, above all Glory and Honour, above all Power and Dignity, above all Knowledge and Subtlety, above all Riches and Arts, above all Joy and Gladness, above all Fame and Praise, above all Sweetness and Consolation, above all Hope and Promise, above all Merit and Desire; above all Gifts and Presents that thou canst give and refuse, above all Joy and Jubilation that the Mind can contain and feel; infinite, above Angels and Arch-angels, and all the Host of Heaven; above all things visible and invisible, and above all that which thou, my GOD are not.

2. For thou, O LORD my GOD, art the best above all things: Thou alone most high,

thou alone most powerful ; thou alone most sufficient and most full ; thou alone most sweet and most comfortable ; thou alone most beautiful and most loving ; thou alone most noble and most glorious above all things ; in whom all good things are found together in all their Perfection, and always have been and always will be. And therefore whatever thou bestowest upon me, that is not thyself, or whatever thou revealest to me concerning thyself, or promigest as long as I see thee not, nor fully enjoy thee, is too little and insufficient. Because indeed my Heart cannot truly rest, nor be entirely contented, till it rest in thee, and rise above all thy Gifts, and all things created.

3. O my most beloved Spouse, CHRIST JESUS, most pure Lover, LORD of the whole Creation ; who will give me the Wings of true Liberty, to fly and repose in thee ? Oh ! when shall it be fully granted me to attend at leisure and see how sweet thou art, O LORD my GOD ! When shall I fully recollect myself in thee, that through the Love of thee I may not feel myself, but thee alone, above all Feeling and Measure, in a Manner not known to all ? But now I often sigh, and bear my Misfortune with Grief ; because I meet with many Evils in this Vale of Miseries, which frequently disturb me, afflict me, and cast a Cloud over me ; often hinder me and distract me, allure and entangle me, that I cannot have

free Accesse
graces wh
Let my S
Desolatio

4. O J
ry, the C
with thee
my Silen
my I. OR
me his p
him stret
Wretch
for witho
Day nor
out thee
and in a
Fetters,
thy Pres
shew m

5. Le
else they
or shall
my eter
Peace,
and tho

6. E
thee, b
Tears,
miliati
clined

free Access to thee, nor enjoy thy sweet Embraces which are ever enjoy'd by blessed Spirits. Let my Sighs move thee, and this manifold Desolation under which I labour upon Earth.

4. O JESU, the Brightness of eternal Glory, the Comfort of a Soul in its Pilgrimage; with thee is my Mouth without Voice, and my Silence speaks to thee. How long doth my LORD delay to come. Let him come to me his poor Servant and make me joyful: Let him stretch forth his Hand, and deliver me a Wretch from all Anguish. O come, O come, for without thee I can never have one joyful Day nor Hour, for thou art my Joy; and without thee my Table is empty. I am miserable, and in a manner imprisoned, and loaded with Fetters, till thou comfort me with the Light of thy Presence, and restore me to Liberty, and shew me a favourable Countenance.

5. Let others seek instead of thee, whatever else they please; nothing else doth please me, or shall please me but thou my GOD, my Hope, my eternal Salvation. I will not hold my Peace, nor cease to pray till thy Grace returns, and thou speak to me interiorly.

6. Behold here I am; behold I come to thee, because thou hast called upon me. Thy Tears, and the Desire of thy Soul, thy Humiliation and Contrition of Heart have inclined and brought me to thee.

7. And I said, O LORD, I have called upon thee and have desired to enjoy thee, and am ready to renounce all other things for thee. For thou didst first stir me up that I might seek thee. Bethou therefore blessed, O LORD, who hast shewed this Goodness to thy Servant, according to the Multitude of thy Mercies. What hath thy Servant more to say in thy Presence, but to humble himself exceedingly before thee; always remembering his own Iniquity and Vileness. For there is none like to thee, amongst all Things that are wonderful in Heaven or Earth. Thy Works are exceedingly good, thy Judgments are true, and by thy Providence all things are ruled. Praise therefore and Glory be to thee, O Wisdom of the Father : Let my Tongue, my Soul, and all Things created join in praising thee, and blessing thee.

C H A P. XXII.

Of the Remembrance of the manifold BENEFITS of GOD.

I. **O** PEN, O LORD, my Heart in thy Law, and teach me to walk in thy Commandments. Give me Grace to understand thy Will, and to commemorate with great Reverence and diligent Consideration all thy Benefits as well in general as in particular, that so I may be able worthily to give thee Thanks for them. But I know and confess that I am not able to return thee due

Thanks,
than any
and whe
it loses i

2. A
that we
ture or C
thy Bou
we have
has reco
thine, a
be had.
cannot
himself
fer ; be
who at
humbl
And he
Men,
is fitter

3. I
be trou
is mor
and ve
thou l
freely
All th
art to
is fit
Perfo

Thanks, not even for the least Point. I am less than any of thy Benefits bestowed upon me; and when I consider thy Excellency, my Spirit loses itself in the Greatness of thy Majesty.

2. All that we have in Soul and Body, all that we possess outwardly or inwardly, by Nature or Grace, are thy Benefits, and commend thy Bounty, Mercy and Goodness, from whom we have received all Good. And tho' one has received more, another less, yet all is thine, and without thee even the least cannot be had. He that has received greater Things cannot glory of his own Merit, nor extol himself above others, nor insult over the lesser; because he is indeed greater and better, who attributes less to himself, and is more humble and devout in returning Thanks: And he who esteems himself the vilest of all Men, and judges himself the most unworthy, is fittest to receive the greatest Blessings.

3. But he that has received fewer must not be troubled, nor take it ill, nor envy him that is more enriched; but attend rather to thee, and very much praise thy Goodness, for that thou bestowest thy Gifts so plentifully, so freely and willingly without respect of Persons. All things are from thee, and therefore thou art to be praised in all. Thou knowest what is fit to be given to every-one; and why this Person hath less, and the other more, is not

our Business to decide, but thine, who keepeth an exact Account of the Merits of each one.

4. Wherefore, O LORD GOD, I take thee for a great Benefit, not to have much, which outwardly and according to Men might appear praise-worthy and glorious. So that a Person, considering his own Poverty and Meanness, ought not upon that Account to be weighed down, or to be grieved and dejected, but rather to receive Comfort and great Pleasure: Because thou, O GOD, hast chosen the Poor and the Humble, and those that are despised by this World, for thy familiar Friends and Domesticks. Witness thy Apostles themselves, whom thou hast appointed Rulers over all the Earth; and yet they conversed in this World without Complaint, so humble and simple, without any Malice or Guile, that they were even glad when they suffered Affronts and Reproaches for thy Name; and what the World flies from, they embraced with great Affection.

5. Nothing therefore ought to give so great Joy to him that loves thee, and knows thy Benefits, as the Accomplishment of thy Will in himself, and the Pleasure of thy eternal Appointment, with which he ought to be so far contented and comforted, as to be as willing to be the least, as any one would wish to be the greatest, and to enjoy as much Peace and Content in the lowest Place, as in the

Chap. 23

highest; and more in the World, and greater Love of thee above all, more than he hath received

OF FOUR

1. SON

of

2. Do

sayst, for

3. En

Will of

rather to

the lower

one; al

GOD m

hold, su

Coasts o

4. L

much P

full in S

it could

not be

find my

sensible

Doctrin

highest; and to be as willing to be despicable and mean, and of no Name and Repute in the World, as to be preferred in Honour, and greater than others; for thy Will, and the Love of thy Honour, ought to be regarded above all, and to comfort and please him more than any Benefits whatsoever which he hath received, or can receive.

C H A P. XXIII.

OF FOUR THINGS *which bring much PEACE.*

1. SON, I will teach thee now the way of Peace and true Liberty.

2. DO, LORD, I beseech thee, as thou sayst, for I shall be very glad to hear it.

3. Endeavour, my Son, rather to do the Will of another than thy own; ever chuse rather to have less, than more; always seek the lowest Place, and to be inferior to every one; always wish any pray that the Will of GOD may be entirely fulfilled in thee. Behold, such a Man as this enters upon the Coasts of Peace and Rest.

4. LORD, this thy short Speech contains much Perfection: 'Tis short in Words, but full in Sense and plentiful in its Fruit; for if it could be faithfully observed by me, I should not be so easily troubled: For as often as I find myself disquieted and disturbed, I am sensible it is because I have strayed from this Doctrine. But thou, O LORD, who canst

do all things, and always loveſt the Progreſs of the Soul, increaſe in me thy Grace, that I may accompliſh this thy Word, and perfect my Salvation.

A PRAYER againſt Evil THOUGHTS.

5. O LORD my GOD, depart not far from me: O my GOD, have regard to help me, for diſverſe evil Thoughts have riſen up againſt me, and great Fears afflicting my Soul. How ſhall I paſs without Hurt? How ſhall I break thro' them?

6. *I (ſaith he) will go before thee, and will humble the great ones of the Earth, Iſa. xxv. I will open the Gates of the Priſon, and reveal to thee the hidden Secrets.*

7. Do, LORD, as thou ſayeſt, and let all theſe wicked Thoughts flee from before thy Face. This is my Hope and my only Comfort, to fly to thee in all Tribulations, to conſide in thee, to call on thee from my Heart, and patiently to look for thy Conſolation.

A PRAYER for the enlightning of the MIND.

8. Enlighten me, O good JESUS, with the Brightneſs of the internal Light; and caſt out all Darkneſs from the Dwelling of my Heart. Reſtrain my many wandring Thoughts and ſuppreſs the Temptations that violently aſſault me. Fight ſtrongly for me, and overcome theſe wicked Beaſts, I mean theſe alluring Concupiſcences; that Peace may be made in thy Power, and the Abundance of thy

Praiſe me
is a clear
and Sto
and to
and a g

9. Se
that the
am an E
enlighte
from ab
of Heav
tion, to
forth go
Mind,
raiſe m
Things
the Ha
in thin

10.
all unt
created
Deſire
rable E
tiſfy th
things

That v

I. S
to the

Praise may resound in thy Holy Court, which is a clean Conscience. Command the Winds and Storms ; say to the Sea, be thou still, and to the North-Wind, blow thou not ; and a great Calm shall ensue.

9. Send forth thy Light and thy Truth, that they may shine upon the Earth ; for I am an Earth that is empty and void, till thou enlightenest me, *Gen. i.* Pour forth thy Grace from above ; water my Heart with the Dew of Heaven ; send down the Waters of Devotion, to wash the Face of the Earth, to bring forth good and perfect Fruit. Lift up my Mind, oppress'd with the Load of Sins, and raise my whole Desire towards heavenly Things ; that having tasted the Sweetness of the Happiness above, I may have no Pleasure in thinking of the Things of the Earth.

10. Draw me away and deliver me from all unstable Comfort of Creatures, for no created Thing can fully quiet and satisfy my Desire. Join me to thyself with an inseparable Bond of Love ; for thou alone canst satisfy the Lover ; and without thee all other things are frivolous.

C H A P. XXIV.

That we are not to be curious in enquiring into the LIFE of others.

1. SON, be not curious, and give not way to useless Cares : What is this or that to thee ? Do thou follow me : For what is

it to thee whether this Man be such, or such; or that Man do say this or the other? Thou art not to answer for others, but must give an Account for thyself; why therefore dost thou meddle with them? Behold, I know every one, and see all Things that are done under the Sun; and I know how it is with every one, what he thinks, what he would have, and at what his Intention aims. All things therefore are to be committed to me; but as for thy Part, keep thyself in good Peace, and let the Busy-body be as busy as he will, whatsoever he shall do or say will come upon himself, because he cannot deceive me.

2. Be not solicitous for the Shadow of a great Name, neither seek to be familiarly acquainted with many, nor to be particularly loved by Men; for these things beget Distractions and great Darkeness in the Heart. I would willingly speak my Word to thee, and reveal my Secrets to thee; if thou wouldst diligently observe my coming, and open to me the Door of thy Heart. Be careful and watch in Prayers, and humble thyself in all things.

C H A P. XXV.

In what Things the firm Peace of the HEART and true PROGRESS doth consist.

1. **S**ON, I have said, *Peace I leave to you, my Peace I give to you: Not as the World giveth, do I give to you, St. John xiv. Peace is what all desire; but all care not for those*

things wh

Peace is v

Thy Pea

thou wil

thou ma

2. W

3. In

thou art

direct th

mayst p

seek any

ings or

rashly;

commi

brough

seldom

ble at a

Body i

of ever

thou h

Burden

have n

tained

accord

thou t

or im

if thou

For 't

true I

Progr

these

things which appertain to true *Peace*. My *Peace* is with the Humble and Meek of Heart: Thy *Peace* shall be in much Patience. If thou wilt hear me, and follow my Voice, thou mayst enjoy much *Peace*.

2. What then shall I do, LORD?

3. In every thing attend to thyself what thou art doing, and what thou art saying; and direct thy whole Intention to this, that thou mayst please me alone, and neither desire nor seek any thing out of me. And as for the Sayings or Doings of others, judge of nothing rashly; neither busy thyself with things not committed to thy Care; and thus may it be brought about that thou shalt be little or seldom disturbed. But never to feel any Trouble at all, nor to suffer any Grief of Heart or Body is not the State of this present Life, but of everlasting Rest. Think not therefore that thou hast found true *Peace*, if thou feelest no Burden; nor that then all is well, if thou have no Adversary; nor that thou hast attained to Perfection, if all things be done, according to thy Inclination: Neither do thou then conceive a great Notion of thyself, or imagine thyself to be especially beloved, if thou be in great Devotion and Sweetness: For 'tis not in such Things as these that a true Lover of Virtue is known; nor doth the Progress and Perfection of a Man consist in these Things.

4. In

4. In what then, O LORD?

5. In offering thyself with thy whole Heart to the Will of GOD; not seeking the things that are thine either in Little or Great, either in Time or in Eternity: So that with the same equal Countenance thou continue giving Thanks both in Prosperity and Adversity, weighing all things in an equal Balance. If thou come to be so valiant and long-suffering in Hope, that when interior Comfort is withdrawn, thou canst prepare thy Heart to suffer still more; and dost not justify thyself as if thou oughtest not to suffer such great things; but acknowledgest my Justice in all my Appointments, and praisest my holy Name: Then it is that thou walkest in the true and right way of Peace, and mayst hope without any Question to see my Face again with great Joy. And if thou arrive to an entire Contempt of thyself, know that then thou shalt enjoy an Abundance of Peace, as much as is possible in this State of Banishment.

C H A P. XXVI.

Of the Eminence of a free MIND, which humble PRAYER better procures than READING.

1. **L**ORD, this is the Work of a perfect Man, never to let one's Mind slacken from attending to heavenly things, and to pass through many Cares, as it were without Care; not after the Manner of an indolent Person, but by a certain Prerogative

of a free
inordinat

2. Pr
most me
Life, th
them; f
that I m
from all
overcor
don't fa
Vanity
from th
Curse
weigh
Servan
enter i

3. C
ness,
Comf
of TH
to itse
sent o
Flesh
oyero
transf
Devi
Fort
tienc
I ma
Con
Un

of a free Mind, which doth not cleave by an inordinate Affection to any thing created.

2. Preserve me, I beseech thee, O my most merciful GOD, from the Cares of this Life, that I be not too much entangled by them; from the many Necessities of the Body, that I may not be ensnared by Pleasure; and from all Hindrances of the Soul, lest being overcome by Troubles I be cast down: I don't say from those things which worldly Vanity covets with so much Eagerness; but from these Miseries, which by the general Curse of our Mortality, as Punishments, weigh down and keep back the Soul of thy Servant from being able, when it will, to enter into Liberty of Spirit.

3. O my GOD, who art unspeakable Sweetness, turn into Bitterness to me all carnal Comfort, which withdraws me from the Love of Things eternal, and wickedly allures me to itself by setting before me a certain present delightful Good. O my GOD, let not Flesh and Blood prevail over me, let it not overcome me: Let not the World and its transitory Glory deceive me: Let not the Devil supplant me by his Craft: Give me Fortitude, that I may stand my Ground: Patience that I may endure, and Constancy that I may persevere. Give me in lieu of all the Comforts of this World, the most delightful Unction of thy Spirit; and instead of carnal

Love, infuse into me the Love of thy Name.

4. Behold! Eating, Drinking, Cloathing, and other Necessaries appertaining to the Support of the Body are burthensome to a fervent Spirit. Grant that I may use such Things with moderation, and not be entangled with an inordinate Affection to them. It is not lawful to cast them all away, for Nature must be supported; but to require Superfluities, and such Things as are more delightful, thy holy Law forbids; for otherwise the Flesh would grow insolent against the Spirit. In all this I beseech thee let thy Hand govern and direct me, that I may no way exceed.

C H A P. XXVII.

That SELF-LOVE chiefly keeps a Person back from the SOVEREIGN GOOD.

1. **M**Y Son, thou must give all for all, and be nothing of thy own. Know that the Love of thyself is more hurtful to thee than anything in the World. Everything, according to the Love and Inclination which thou hast to it, cleaveth to thee more or less. If thy Love be pure, simple, and well order'd, thou shalt not be a Captive to any thing. Covet not that which thou mayst not have: Seek not to have that which may hinder thee and rob thee of inward Liberty. 'Tis wonderful that thou wilt not from the very Bottom of thy Heart commit thyself wholly to me, with all Things that thou canst desire or have.

Chap. 2

2. W

Grief? V

Cares? St

and thou

est this, o

for the Sa

ing thy o

nor free fr

thalt find

there wil

3. 'T

upplying

rather th

them up

I would

with reg

with reg

the Def

pafs aw

vails litt

neither

sought

want th

stand n

not bet

pens, t

fly from

A PR

and

4. C

thy H

2. Why dost thou pine away with vain Grief? Why tirest thou thyself with useless Cares? Stand resigned to my good Pleasure, and thou shalt suffer no Loss. If thou seekst this, or that, or wouldst be here or there, for the Sake of thy own Interest, or the pleasing thy own Will, thou shalt never be at rest, nor free from Solicitude; for in every thing thou shalt find some Defect, and in every Place there will be some one that will cross thee.

3. 'Tis not therefore the obtaining or multiplying things exteriorly that avails thee, but rather the despising of them, and cutting them up by the Root out of thy Heart; which I would not have thee to understand only with regard to Money and Riches, but also with regard to the Ambition of Honour, and the Desire of empty Praise; all which Things pass away with the World. The Place avails little, if the Spirit of Fervor be wanting; neither shall that Peace stand long which is sought from abroad, if the State of thy Heart want the true Foundation, that is, if thou stand not in me: Thou mayst change, but not better thyself. For when Occasion happens, thou shalt find that which thou didst fly from, and more.

A PRAYER for the cleansing of the HEART, and the obtaining of heavenly WISDOM.

4. Confirm me, O GOD, by the Grace of thy Holy Spirit. Give me Power to be

strengthened in the inward Man, and to cast out of my Heart all unprofitable Care and Trouble ; let me not be drawn away with various Desires of any thing whatsoever, whether it be of little or great value ; but may I look upon all things as passing away, and myself as passing along with them. For nothing is lasting under the Sun, where all is vanity and affliction of Spirit. O how wise is he who considers things in this manner !

5. Give me, O LORD, heavenly Wisdom, that I may learn above all things to seek thee, and to find thee ; above all things to relish thee, and to love thee, and to understand all other things, as they are, according to the Order of thy Wisdom. Grant that I may prudently decline him that flatters me, and patiently bear with him that contradicts me. For this is great Wisdom, not to be moved with every Wind of Words, nor to give Ear to the wicked flattering Siren ; for thus shall we go on securely in the way we have begun.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Against the TONGUES of DETRACTERS.

1. SON, take it not to heart if some People think ill of thee, and say of thee what thou art not willing to hear. Thou oughtest to think worse of thyself, and to believe that no one is weaker than thyself. If thou walkest *interiorly*, thou wilt make small account of flying Words. It is no small

Prudence
to turn wi
with the

2. Let

of Men ;

Constru

what the

true Glo

covets no

pleasure,

quiet of l

arises fro

How in

1. BL

this Tr

on me.

Necessi

me, an

now in

Ease ;

sent Su

shall I

Streigh

for thi

thou r

exceed

May i

Prudence to be silent in the evil Time, and to turn within to me, and not to be disturbed with the Judgment of Man.

2. Let not thy Peace be in the Tongues of Men ; for whether they put a good or bad Construction on what thou doest, thou art still what thou art. Where is true Peace, and true Glory ? Is it not in me ? And he who covets not to please Men, nor fears their Displeasure, shall enjoy much Peace. All Disquiet of Heart, and Distraction of our Senses, arises from inordinate Love, and vain Fear.

C H A P. XXIX.

How in the Time of TRIBULATION GOD is to be invoked and blessed.

I. **B**LESSED, O LORD, be thy Name for ever, who hast been pleased that this Trial and Tribulation should come upon me. I cannot fly from it, but must of Necessity fly to thee ; that thou mayst help me, and turn it to my Good. LORD, I am now in Tribulation, and my Heart is not at Ease ; but I am much afflicted with this present Suffering. And now, dear Father, what shall I say ? I am taken, LORD, in these Streights : O save me from this Hour. But for this Reason I came into this Hour, that thou mightest be glorified, when I shall be exceedingly humbled, and deliver'd by Thee. May it please Thee, O LORD, to deliver me ;
for

for, poor Wretch that I am ! What can I do, and whither shall I go without Thee? Give me Patience, O LORD, this Time also; Help me, O my GOD, and I will not fear, how much soever I may be oppressed.

2. And now in the Midst of these Things, what shall I say? LORD, thy Will be done: I have well deserved to be afflicted and troubled. I must needs bear it; and would to GOD, it may be with Patience, till the Storm pass over, and it be better. But thy Almighty Hand is able to take away from me this Temptation also, and to moderate its Violence, lest I quite sink under it ; as thou hast often done heretofore for me; *O my GOD, my Mercy.* And how much the more difficult this is to me, so much the easier to thee is *this Change of the Right-hand of the most High.* Pf. lxxvi.

C H A P. XXX.

Of asking the Divine ASSISTANCE and of Confidence of recovering GRACE.

1. **S**ON, I am the LORD, who give Strength in the Day of Tribulation : Come to me when it is not well with thee. This is that which most of all hinders heavenly Comfort, that thou art slow in turning thyself to Prayer. For before thou earnestly prayest to me, thou seekest in the mean time many Comforts, and delightest thyself in outward Things : And hence it comes to

cafs, that
take notice
that trust
powerful
lasting R
Spirit aft
gain in
for I am
all, not
bundanc

2. Is

belikeo

Where

persever

Courag

proper

come a

trouble

thee ; v

Accide

Sorrow

of, Ma

Thing

ture th

3.

with f

that a

way b

he ca

or fal

whet

rais, that all Things avail thee little, till thou take notice that I am he who deliver those that trust in me: Nor is there out of me any powerful Help, nor profitable Counsel, nor lasting Remedy. But now having recovered Spirit after the Storm, grow thou strong again in the Light of my tender Mercies; for I am at hand, saith the Lord to repair all, not only to the Full, but even with abundance, and above Measure.

2. Is any thing difficult to me? Or shall I be like one that promises and does not perform? Where is thy Faith? Stand firmly, and with perseverance. Have Patience and be of good Courage; Comfort will come to thee in its proper Season: Wait for me, wait, I will come and cure thee. 'Tis a Temptation that troubles thee, and a vain Fear that frights thee; what does that Solitude about future Accidents bring thee but only Sorrow upon Sorrow? *Sufficient for the Day is the Evil thereof*, Matt. vi. 'Tis a vain and unprofitable Thing, to conceive either Grief or Joy for future things, which perhaps will never happen.

3. But 'tis incident to Man to be deluded with such Imaginations; and a Sign of a Soul that as yet is weak to be so easily drawn away by the Suggestion of the Enemy. For he cares not whether it be with Things true or false, that he abuses and deceives thee; whether he overthrow thee with the Love of

Things present, or the Fear of Things to come. Let not therefore thy Heart be troubled, and let it not fear : Believe in me, and trust in my Mercy. When thou thinkest I am far from thee, I am often nearest to thee. When thou judgest that almost all is lost, then oftentimes it is that thou art in the way of the greatest Gain of Merit. All is not lost, when any thing falls out otherwise than thou wouldst have it. Thou must not judge according to thy present feeling, nor give thyself up in such manner to any Trouble from whencesoever it comes, nor take it so, as if all Hope was gone of being deliver'd out of it.

4. Think not thyself wholly forsaken, altho' for a time I have sent thee some Tribulation, or withdrawn from thee the Comfort which thou desirest ; for this is the Way to the Kingdom of Heaven : And without all doubt it is more expedient for thee, and for the rest of my Servants, that you be exercised by Adversities than that you should have all Things according to your Inclination. I know thy secret Thoughts, I know that 'tis very expedient for thy Soul that thou shouldst sometimes be left without Gust, lest thou shouldst be puffed up with good Success, and shouldst take a Complaisance in thyself, imagining thyself to be what thou art not. What I have given I can justly take away, and restore it again when I please.

5. Wh
I take it a
that is thi
perfect Gi
three Affli
neither le
quickly r
burthen
and great
with the

6. If t
things in
much de
ity ; but
yea, to
Joy, tha
with So
also hav
ciples ;
not sen
licts ;
not to
but to
Remer

Of dis

1. L
far, t
Man,

5. When I give it, it is still mine ; when I take it away again, I take not any thing that is thine ; for *every good Gift and every perfect Gift is mine*, 1 St. James i. If I send thee Affliction, or any Adversity, repine not, neither let thy Heart be cast down ; I can quickly raise thee up again, and turn all thy Burthen into Joy. Nevertheless, I am just, and greatly to be praised, when I deal thus with thee.

6. If thou thinkest rightly, and considerest things in Truth, thou oughtst never to be so much dejected and troubled for any Adversity ; but rather to rejoice and give Thanks ; yea, to account this as a special Subject of Joy, that I do not spare thee, afflicting thee with Sorrows. *As my Father hath loved me, I also have loved you*, said I to my beloved Disciples ; St. John xv. Whom certainly I did not send to temporal Joys, but to great Conflicts ; not to Honours, but to Contempt ; not to Idleness, but to Labours ; not to rest, but to bring forth much Fruit in Patience. Remember these Words, O my Son.

C H A P. XXXI.

Of disregarding all THINGS created, that so we may find the CREATOR.

1. LORD, I stand much in need of a Grace yet greater, if I must arrive so far, that it may not be in the Power of any Man, nor any Thing created, to hinder me ;

for as long as any thing holds me, I cannot freely fly to thee. He was desirous to fly freely to thee, who said, *Who will give me Wings like a Dove, and I will fly and be at rest*, Pf. liv. What can be more at rest than a simple Eye [that aims at nothing but God]? And what can be more free, than he that desires nothing upon Earth? A Man ought therefore to pass and ascend above every thing created, and perfectly to forsake himself, and in Ecstasy of Mind to stand and to see that thou, the Maker of all Things hast no Similitude with thy Creatures. And unless a Man be at Liberty from all Things created, he cannot freely attend to Things Divine. And this is the Reason why there are found so few contemplative Persons, because there are few that wholly sequester themselves from transitory and created Things.

2. For this, a great Grace is required, which may elevate the Soul, and carry her up above herself. And unless a Man be elevated in Spirit, and set at Liberty from all Creatures, and wholly united to God; whatever he knows, and whatever he has, is of no great weight. Long shall he be little, and lie groveling beneath, who esteems any thing great but only the *one, immense, eternal Good*. And whatsoever is not God is *nothing*, and ought to be accounted as *nothing*. There is a great Difference between the Wisdom of

an illumi-
edge of
learning
Divine I
our is a

3. M
on; bu
which a
impedin
ble Th
Mortific
what Sp
to, who
that we
greater
Things
fully re

4. A
present
do we
amina
Affect
want
bad con
Flood
foreo
it mu
lows
of the
Hear

an illuminated devout Man, and the Knowledge of a Scholar: Far more noble is that Learning which flows from Above, from the Divine Influence, than that which with Labour is acquired by the Wit of Man.

3. Many are found to desire Contemplation; but they care not to practise those Things which are required thereunto. 'Tis a great Impediment that we stand in Signs and sensible Things, and have but little of perfect Mortification. I know not what it is, by what Spirit we are led, or what we pretend to, who seem to be called *spiritual* Persons; that we take so much Pains, and have a greater Solitude for transitory and mean Things; and scarce ever have our Senses fully recollected to think of our own Interior.

4. Alas! after a slight Recollection, we presently get out of ourselves again; neither do we weigh well our Works by a strict Examination: We take no notice where our Affections lie; nor do we lament the great want of Purity in all we do: For *all Flesh had corrupted its Way*, and therefore the great Flood ensued; *Gen. vi. and vii.* As therefore our interior Affection is much corrupted, it must needs be that the Action which follows should be corrupted also; a Testimony of the want of inward Vigour. From a pure Heart proceeds the Fruit of a good Life.

K

5. We

5. We are apt to enquire how much a Man has done ; but with how much Virtue he has done it, is not so diligently considered. We ask whether he be strong, rich, beautiful, ingenious, a good Writer, a good Singer, or a good Workman ; but how poor he is in Spirit, how patient and meek, how devout and internal, is what few speak of. Nature looks upon the outward things of a Man, but Grace turns herself to the interior. Nature is often deceived, but Grace hath her Trust in GOD, that she may not be deceived.

C H A P. XXXII.

Of denying ourselves and renouncing Cupidity.

1. **S**ON, thou canst not possess perfect Liberty, unless thou wholly deny thyself. All Self-seekers and Self-lovers are bound in Fetters, full of Desires, full of Cares, unsettled, and seeking always their own Ease, and not the Things of JESUS CHRIST, but oftentimes devising and framing that which shall not stand : for all shall come to nothing that proceeds not from GOD. Take this short and perfect Word, *For sake all and thou shalt find all, leavethy Desires and thou shalt find Rest.* Consider this well, and when thou shalt put it in practice, thou shalt understand all things.

2. **L**ORD, this is not the Work of one Day, nor Childrens Sport ; yea in this short Sentence is included the whole Perfection of Religions. Son, thou must not be turn'd back, nor

Chap. 3
presently
the way
thereby
to sigh a
would it
come fo
of thyself
and at h
thee ; th
and all t
Thou h
unless t
thou sh
mande
in the L
ii. Th
under l
Wisd
please
3. I
Thing
Men,
conter
very
though
teach
to see
many
are fa
Pearl

presently cast down, when thou hearest what the way of the Perfect is, but rather be incited thereby, to undertake great things, or at least to sigh after them with an earnest Desire. I would it were so with thee, and that thou wert come so far that thou wert no longer a Lover of thyself, but didst stand wholly at my beck, and at his whom I have appointed Father over thee; then wouldst thou exceedingly please me and all thy Life would pass in Joy and Peace. Thou hast yet many things to forsake, which unless thou give up to me without reserve, thou shalt not attain to that which thou demandest; *I counsel thee to buy of me Gold tried in the Fire, that thou mayst become rich, Apoc. ii.* That is, heavenly Wisdom which treads under Foot all things below. Set aside the Wisdom of the Earth, *i. e.* all seeking to please the World and thyself.

3. I have said that thou shouldst give the Things that are high and of great esteem with Men, to purchase those which are esteemed contemptible; for true heavenly wisdom seems very mean and contemptible, and is scarce thought of by Men; that Wisdom which teaches to think meanly of one's self, and not to seek to become great upon Earth; which many praise in Words, but in their Life, they are far from it; yet this same is that *precious Pearl* which is hidden from many, *Matt. xiii.*

C H A P. XXXIII.

Of the Inconstancy of our HEART, and of directing our final Intention to GOD.

1. **S**ON, trust not to thy present Affection, it will quickly be changed into another. As long as thou livest thou art subject to change, even against thy Will; so as to be sometimes joyful, other times sad, now easy, anon troubled; at one time devout, at another dry, sometimes fervent, other times sluggish, one Day heavy, another lighter. But he that is wise and well instructed in Spirit stands above all these Changes; not minding what he feels in himself, nor on what side the Wind of Mutability blows; but that the whole bent of his Soul may advance towards its due and wish'd for End; for so he may continue one and the self-same without being shaken, by directing without ceasing thro' all this Variety of Events, the single Eye of his Intention towards me.

2. And by how much the Purer the Eye of the Intention is, by so much the more constantly may one pass thro' these diverse Storms. But in many the Eye of *pure Intention* is dark, for we quickly look towards something delightful which comes in our Way; and it is rare to find one wholly free from all Blemish of Self-seeking. So the *Jews* heretofore came into *Bethania* to *Martha* and *Mary* not for *JESUS* only, but that they might see *La-*

Chap. 3.

arus also
intention
may be f
rected un
jects that

That he

1. BE

w
desire m
Word
not the
the W
aid to
lightful
For wh
Deligh
are loa
the He

Thou
thee in
out th
make
must
with

2.

all T
thee
light

varus also, St. *John xi.* The Eye of the Intention therefore must be purified, that it may be single and right; and must be directed unto me, beyond all the various Objects that interpose themselves.

C H A P. XXXIV.

That he that loves GOD relishes him above all THINGS, and in all THINGS.

1. **B**EHOLD my GOD, and my *All*. What would I have more, and what can I desire more happy? O savoury and sweet Word! But to him that loves *the Word*, not the World, nor the Things that are in the World. *My GOD, and all!* Enough is said to him that understands; and it is delightful to him that loves to repeat it often: For when thou art present, all Things yield Delight; but when thou art absent all Things are loathsome. Thou givest Tranquility to the Heart, and great Peace, and pleasant Joy. Thou makest to think well of all, and praise thee in all Things; nor can any thing without thee afford any lasting Pleasure: But to make it agreeable and relishing, thy Grace must be present; and it must be seasoned with the Seasoning of thy Wisdom.

2. He that has a Relish of thee will find all Things savoury: And to him that relishes thee not, what can ever yield any true Delight? But the Wise of this World, and the

Admirers of the Flesh, are far from the relish of thy Wisdom; because in the World is much Vanity, and the following of the Flesh leads to Death. But they that follow thee, by despising the Things of this World, and mortifying the Flesh, are found to be wise indeed: For they are translated from Vanity to Truth, from the Flesh to the Spirit. Such as these have a Relish of GOD; and what Good soever is found in Creatures, they refer it all to the Praise of their Maker. But great, yea very great, is the Difference between the Relish of the Creator and Creature; of Eternity and of Time; of Light increated, and of Light enlightened.

3. O Light eternal, transcending all created Lights, dart forth thy Lightning from above, which may penetrate all the most inward Parts of my Heart: Cleanse, cherish, enlighten, and enliven my Spirit with its Powers, that it may be obsopt in thee with Ecstasies of Joy. Oh! when will this blessed and desirable Hour come, when thou shalt fill me with thy Presence, and become to me *All in All*? As long as this is not granted me, my Joy will not be full. Alas! the old Man is still living in me; he is not wholly crucified; he is not perfectly dead; he still lusts strongly against the Spirit; he wages War within me, and suffers not the Kingdom of my Soul to be quiet.

4. But,

Chap. 3.

4. But,

of the Sea.

Pf. lxxx

the People

them by

thee, th

Right-h

ther Ho

O Lor

That th

1. SO

b

ways r

the mi

Sides.

Buckle

witho

fix thy

sufferi

not su

attain

hovet

fully,

Thir

overc

the S

2.

then

4. But, O LORD, who *rulest over the Power of the Sea, and assuagest the Motion of its Waves* (Ps. lxxxviii.) arise and help me. *Dissipate the People which desire War*, Ps. lxvii. Crush them by thy Power: Shew forth, I beseech thee, thy wonderful Works; and let thy Right-hand be glorified: For there is no other Hope, nor Refuge for me, but in thee, O LORD, my GOD.

C H A P. XXXV.

That there is no being secure from TEMPTATION in this LIEE.

1. SON, thou art never secure in this Life; but as long as thou livest thou hast always need of spiritual Arms. Thou art in the midst of Enemies, and art assaulted on all Sides. If then thou dost not make use of the Buckler of Patience, thou wilt not be long without Wound. Moreover, if thou dost not fix thy Heart on me, with a sincere Will of suffering all Things for my Sake, thou canst not support the Heat of this Warfare, nor attain to the Victory of the Saints. It becometh thee therefore to go through all manfully, and to use a strong Hand against all Things that oppose thee; for *to him that overcomes is given Manna*, Apoc. ii. And to the Sluggard is left much Misery.

2. If thou seekest Rest in this Life, how then wilt thou come to Rest everlasting? Set
not

not thyself to seek for much Rest, but for much Patience. Seek true Peace, not upon Earth, but in Heaven; not in Men, nor in other Things created, but in GOD alone. Thou must be willing, for the Love of GOD, to suffer all Things, *viz.* Labours and Sorrows, Temptations and Vexations, Anxieties, Necessities, Sickneses, Injuries, Detractions, Reprehensions, Humiliations, Confusions, Corrections and Contempts. These Things help to obtain Virtue: These try a Novice of Christ: These procure a heavenly Crown. I will give an everlasting Reward for this short Labour, and Glory without End for transitory Confusion.

3. Dost thou think to have always spiritual Consolations when thou pleasest? My Saints had not so; but met with many Troubles, and various Temptations, and great Desolations: But they bore all with Patience, and confided more in GOD than in themselves; knowing that the Sufferings of this Life are not of equal Proportion to the Merit of the Glory to come. Wouldst thou have that immediately, which others after many Tears and great Labours have hardly obtained: Expect the LORD, do manfully, and be of good Heart. Don't despond, don't fall off; but constantly offer both Soul and Body for the Glory of GOD. I will reward thee most abundantly,

Chap. 3
abundant
Tribulation

Against

SON

an

when thy

Piety an

to suffer

grievous

that tru

Many fa

Credit i

possible

to pleas

self all

made l

Man's

2. H

vation

lay in

ing fo

There

know

and H

that f

out a

him.

times

of S

abundantly, and will be with thee in all thy Tribulations.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Against the vain JUDGMENTS of MEN.

1. SON, cast thy Heart firmly on the LORD, and fear not the Judgment of Man, when thy Conscience gives Testimony of thy Piety and Innocence. 'Tis good and happy to suffer in this Manner, neither will this be grievous to an humble Heart, nor to him that trusts in GOD more than in himself. Many say many Things, and therefore little Credit is to be given to them. Neither is it possible to satisfy all; tho' Paul endeavour'd to please all in the LORD, and made himself all unto all: Yet at the same time he made little account of his being judged by Man's Day, 1 Cor. iv. and ix.

2. He labour'd for the Edification and Salvation of others, as much as he could, and as lay in him; but he could not prevent his being sometimes judged or despised by others: Therefore he committed all to GOD, who knows all; and defended himself by Patience and Humility against the Tongues of those that spoke evil, or that thought and gave out at Pleasure vain and faulty Things of him. However, he answered them sometimes, lest his Silence might give Occasion of Scandal to the Weak.

3. Who

3. Who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of a mortal Man? To-day he is, and To-morrow he appears no more. Fear God, and thou shalt have no need of being afraid of Man. What can any one do against thee, by his Words or Injuries? He rather hurts himself than thee; nor can he escape the Judgment of God whoever he be. See thou have God before thine Eyes; and don't contend with complaining Words. And if at present thou seem to be overcome, and to suffer a Confusion which thou hast not deserved; don't repine at this, and don't lessen thy Crown by Impatience: But rather look up to me in Heaven, who am able to deliver thee from all Confusion and Wrong, and to repay every one according to his Works.

C H A P. XXXVII.

Of a pure and full Resignation of ourselves, for the obtaining Freedom of HEART.

1. **S**ON, leave thyself, and thou shalt find me. Stand without Choice, or any Self-seeking; and thou shalt always gain. For greater Grace shall always be added to thee, when thou hast perfectly given up thyself, without resuming thyself again.

2. **L**ORD, how often shall I resign myself; and in what Things shall I leave myself.

3. Always, and at all times; as in little, so also in great: I make no Exception, but will

will have
of thyself
mine, and
in and wi
thinner th
be for th
thou dost
and the

4. So
but 'tis
don't tru
busy to
the first
faulted
they let
gress in
true Li
Grace
unless
up, and
me: I
is nor

5.
it now
and th
Give
back,
dence
thalt
and

will have thee to be found in all Things stript of thyself. Otherwise how canst thou be mine, and I thine ; unless thou be both within and without freed from all Self-will ? The sooner thou effectest this, the better will it be for thee ; and the more fully and sincerely thou dost it, the more shalt thou please me, and the more shalt thou gain.

4. Some there are that resign themselves, but 'tis with some Exception : For they don't trust wholly to GOD, and therefore are busy to provide for themselves. Some also at the first offer all ; but afterwards, being assaulted by Temptation, return again to what they left ; and therefore they make no Progress in Virtue. These shall not attain to the true Liberty of a pure Heart, nor to the Grace of a delightful Familiarity with me ; unless they first entirely resign themselves up, and offer themselves a daily Sacrifice to me : For without this, Divine Union neither is nor will be obtain'd.

5. I have often said to thee, and I repeat it now again, forsake thyself, resign thyself, and thou shalt enjoy a great inward Peace. Give all for all, seek nothing, call for nothing back, stand purely, and with a full Confidence in me, and thou shalt have me. Thou shalt be at Liberty within thy own Heart, and Darknes shall not overwhelm thee.

Aim

Aim only at this, pray for this, desire this, that thou mayst be stript of all Self-seeking, and thus naked follow thy naked JESUS, that thou mayst die to thyself, and live eternally to me. Then all vain Imaginations shall vanish, all evil Disturbances, and superfluous Cares. Then also immoderate Fear shall leave thee, and inordinate Love shall die.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Of the good Government of ourselves in outward THINGS, and of having recourse to GOD in DANGERS.

1. **S**ON, thou must diligently make it thy Aim, that in every Place, and in every Action or outward Employment, thou be inwardly free, and Master of thyself; and that all Things be under thee, and not thou under them. That thou mayst be Lord and Ruler of thy Actions, not a Slave or Bondfman; but rather a Freeman, and a true *Hebrew* transferr'd to the Lot and to the Liberty of the Children of GOD, who stand above the Things present, and contemplate those that are eternal; who look upon transitory Things with the left Eye, and with the right the Things of Heaven: Who suffer not themselves to be drawn away by temporal Things to cleave to them; but they rather draw these Things to that end, for which they were ordain'd by GOD, and appointed by

by that So
all his V

2. If li
not thyself

bokest c
nearest w

every O
the Tab

halt for
and com

present a
recourse

all Dow
Help c

Wicke
manner

there n
sistanc

Israel,
deceiv

did no
giving

with

That

1. S

Wa
it w

by that Sovereign Artift, who has left nothing in all his Works but regular and orderly.

2. If likewise, in all Events, thou ruleft not thyself by the outward Appearances ; nor lookeft on the Things which thou seest or hearest with a carnal Eye ; but presently, on every Occasion, dost enter like *Moses* into the Tabernacle to consult the LORD ; thou shalt sometimes hear the Divine Answer, and come out instructed in many Things present and to come : For *Moses* always had recourse to the Tabernacle, for the deciding all Doubts and Questions ; and fled to the Help of Prayer, against the Dangers and Wickedness of Men. So must thou in like manner fly to the Closet of thy Heart, and there most earnestly implore the Divine Assistance : For *Joshua* and the Children of *Israel*, as we read, *Jos. ix.* Were therefore deceived by the *Gabaonites* ; because they did not first consult the LORD, but too easily giving Credit to fair Words were deluded with counterfeit Piety.

C H A P. XXXIX.

That a MAN must not be over eager in his AFFAIRS.

1. SON, always commit thy Cause to me ; I will dispose well of it in due Season. Wait for my Disposall, and thou shalt find it will be for thy Advantage.

L

2. LORD,

2. LORD, I willingly commit all Things to thee; for my Care can profit little. I wish I was not too much set upon future Events; but offer'd myself with all Readiness to thy Divine Pleasure.

3. My Son, oftentimes a Man eagerly sets about a thing which he desires; but when he has obtained it, he begins to be of another Mind: For our Inclinations are not wont to continue long upon the same thing, but rather pass from one thing to another. 'Tis therefore a Thing not of the least Importance, to forsake one's self even in the least Things.

4. A Man's true Progress consists in denying himself; and the Man that has renounced himself is very much at Liberty, and very safe: But the old Enemy, who opposes all that is Good, fails not to tempt; but Day and Night lays his dangerous Plots to draw the unwary into his deceitful Snare. *Watch and pray (saith the LORD, Mat. xxvi.) that ye enter not into Temptation.*

C H A P. XL.

That MAN hath no Good of himself, and that he cannot glory in ANY THING.

1. **L**ORD, what is Man that thou art mindful of him; or the Son of Man that thou vouchsafest to visit him? Ps. vi. What hath Man deserved, that thou shouldst give him thy Grace? LORD, what Cause have

have I to complain, if thou forsake me? Or what can I justly alledge, if thou refuse to grant my Petition? This, indeed, I may truly think and say; LORD, *I am nothing, I can do nothing, I have nothing of myself that is good*; but I fail and am defective in all Things, and ever tend to *nothing*: And unless I am supported, and interiorly instructed be thee, I become quite tepid and dissolute.

2. But thou, O LORD, art always the same and endurest for ever; always good, just, and holy; doing all Things well, justly and holily; and disposing them in Wisdom. But I, who am more inclined to go back than to go forward, continue not always in one State; for seven different Seasons are changed over me. Yet it quickly becomes better when it pleaseth thee, and thou stretchest out thy helping Hand; for thou alone, without Man's Aid, canst assist me, and so strengthen me, that my Countenance shall be no more changed, but my Heart shall be converted, and take its Rest in thee alone.

3. Wherefore, if I did but well know how to cast away from me all human Comfort, either for the sake of Devotion, or through the Necessity of seeking thee, because there is no Man that can comfort me; then might I justly depend on thy Grace, and rejoice in the Gift of new Consolation.

4. Thanks be to thee, from whom all proceeds, as often as it goes well with me. But, for my Part, I am but meer Vanity, and nothing in thy Sight; an unconstant and weak Man. What have I then to glory in? Or why do I desire to be esteemed? Is it not for nothing? And this is most vain. Truly, Vain-glory is an evil Plague, a very great Vanity; because it draws us away from true Glory, and robs us of heavenly Grace: For whilst a Man takes a Complacence in himself, he displeaseth thee; whilst he gapes after the Praises of Men, he is deprived of true Virtues.

5. But true Glory and holy Joy is to glory in thee, and not in one's self; to rejoice in thy Name, and not to be delighted in one's own Virtue, nor in any Creature save only for thy Sake. Let thy Name be praised, not mine: Let thy Work be extolled, not mine: Let thy holy Name be blessed, but to me let nothing be attributed of the Praises of Men. Thou art my Glory, thou art the Joy of my Heart; in thee will I glory and rejoice all the Day; but *for myself I will glory in nothing but in my Infirmities*; 2 Cor. xii.

6. Let the *Jews* seek the Glory which one Man receives from another: I will seek that which is from GOD alone. All human Glory, all temporal Honour, all worldly Grandeur,

Grandeur, compared to thy eternal Glory, is but Vanity and Foolishness. O my Truth, and my Mercy, my God, Obleſſed Trinity, to thee alone be all Praise, Honour, Power, and Glory, for endless Ages of Ages.

C H A P. XLI.

Of the CONTEMPT of all temporal HONOUR.

1. **M**Y Son, take it not to Heart, if thou ſeeſt others honoured and advanced, and thyſelf deſpiſed and debaſed. Lift up thy Heart to me in Heaven, and thou wilt not be concerned at thy being contemned by Men upon Earth.

2. LORD, we are in Blindneſs, and are quickly ſeduced by Vanity. If I look well into myſelf, never was any Injury done me by any Creature, and therefore I cannot juſtly complain of thee : For, becauſe I have often and grievouſly ſinned againſt thee, all Creatures have Reaſon to take Arms againſt me. To me therefore Confuſion and Contempt is juſtly due ; but to thee Praise, Honour and Glory. And unleſs I put myſelf in this Diſpoſition, to be willing to be deſpiſed and forſaken of all Creatures, and to be eſteemed nothing at all, I cannot arrive at inward Peace and Strength, nor be ſpiritu- ally enlightened, nor fully united to thee.

That our PEACE is not to be placed in MEN.

1. **S**ON, if thou placest thy Peace with any Person, for the sake of thy Contentment in his Company, thou shalt be unsettled and entangled: But if thou hast recourse to the ever-living and subsisting Truth, thou shalt not be grieved when a Friend departs or dies. In *me* the Love of thy Friend must stand; and for *me* is he to be loved, whoever he be that appears to thee good, and is very dear to thee in this Life: Without *me* no Friendship is of any Strength, nor will be durable; nor is that Love true and pure of which I am not the Author. Thou oughtst to be so far mortified to such Affections of Persons beloved, as to wish (for as much as appertains to thee) to be without any Company of Man. By so much the more does a Man draw nigh to GOD, by how much the farther he withdraws himself from all earthly Comfort. So much the higher also he ascends into GOD, by how much the Lower he descends into himself, and by how much the meaner he esteems himself.

2. But he that attributes any thing of Good to himself, stops the Grace of GOD from coming into him; for the Grace of the Holy Ghost ever seeks an humble Heart. If thou couldst perfectly annihilate thyself,
and

Chap. 4
and cast
then shou
of Grace
ures, th
from the
to overc
thou sha
of GOD
be inor
as back
rupts th

Agas
1. S
dom of
Atten
Heart
to Co
solati
mayf
study
will
man
2.
kno
turn
eth
Un
tau

and cast out from thyself all created Love, then should I flow into thee with abundance of Grace. When thou lookest towards Creatures, the Sight of the Creator is withdrawn from thee. Learn, for the Creator's Sake, to overcome thyself in all things; and then thou shalt be able to attain to the Knowledge of GOD. How little soever it be, if a Thing be inordinately loved and regarded, it keeps us back from the sovereign Good, and corrupts the Soul.

C H A P. XLIII.

Against vain and worldly LEARNING.

I. SON, be not moved with the fine and quaint Sayings of Men: *For the Kingdom of GOD consists not in Talk, but in Virtue.* Attend to my Words, which enflame the Heart, and enlighten the Mind; which excite to Compunction, and afford manifold Consolations. Never read any thing that thou mayst appear more learned or more wise; study rather to mortify thy Vices, for this will avail thee more than the Knowledge of many hard Questions.

2. When thou shalt have read, and shalt know many Things, thou must always return to one Beginning. I am he that teacheth Men Knowledge, and I give a more clear Understanding to little ones than can be taught by Man. He to whom I speak will

quickly be wise, and will make great Progress in Spirit. Woe to them that enquire of Men after many curious Things, and are little curious of the way to serve me. The Time will come, when CHRIST, the Master of Masters, the Lord of Angels, shall appear to hear the Lessons of all Men; that is, to examine the Consciences of every one: And then he will search *Jerusalem* with Candles, and the hidden Things of Darkness shall be brought to Light, and the Arguments of Tongues shall be silent.

3. I am he that in an Instant elevates an humble Mind, to comprehend more Reasons of the *eternal Truth* than could be got by ten Years study in the Schools. I teach without Noise of Words, without Confusion of Opinions, without Ambition of Honour, without Contention of Arguments. I teach to despise earthly Things, to loath Things present, to seek Things eternal, to relish Things eternal, to fly Honours, to endure Scandals, to repose all hope in me, to desire nothing out of me, and above all things ardently to love me.

4. For a certain Person, by loving me, entirely learned Divine Things, and spoke Wonders: He profited more by forsaking all Things, than by studying Subtleties. But to some I speak Things common, to others things more particular; to some I sweetly ap-
pear

Chap. 4.

near in Si

light I

Books is

like; b

Truth, t

ander c

ons; dist

Of not a

1. SO

t

as one

the wh

also mu

think

to thy

away

thee,

of Th

ous D

God,

more

2.

hold,

for a

the

hard

of li

and

is

ear in Signs and Figures; to others in great Light I reveal Myſteries. The Voice of the Books is the ſame, but it teacheth not all Men alike; becauſe I within am the Teacher of Truth, the Searcher of the Heart, the Underſtander of Thoughts, the Promoter of Actions; diſtributing to every one as I judge fitting.

C H A P. XLIV.

Of not drawing to ourſelves exterior THINGS.

1. **S**ON, in many Things it behoveth thee to be ignorant, and to eſteem thyſelf as one dead upon Earth, and as one to whom the whole World is crucified. Many things alſo muſt thou paſs by with a deaf Ear, and think rather of thoſe things that appertain to thy Peace. It is more profitable to turn away thy Eyes from ſuch Things as diſpleaſe thee, and to leave to every one his own Way of Thinking, than to give Way to contenti-ous Diſcourſes. If thou ſtandeſt well with God, and lookeſt at his Judgment, thou wilt more eaſily bear to ſee thyſelf overcome.

2. O LORD, to what are we come? Be- hold, a temporal Loſs is greatly bewailed, for a ſmall Gain Men labour and toil; but the Loſs of the Soul is little thought on, and hardly ever returns to Mind. That which is of little or no Profit takes up our Thoughts; and that which is above all Things neceſſary is negligently paſſed over; for the whole

Man sinks down into outward Things; and unless he quickly recovers himself, he willingly continues immersed in them.

C H A P. XLV.

That CREDIT is not to be given to all MEN; and that MEN are prone to offend in WORDS.

1. **G**RANT me Help, O LORD, in my Tribulation, for vain is the Aid of Man, Ps. lix. How often have I not found Faith there, where I thought I might depend upon it? And how often have I found it where I did not expect it? Vain therefore is all Hope in Men; but the Safety of the Just is in thee, O LORD. Blessed be thou, O LORD, my GOD, in all Things that befall us: We are weak and unsettled, we are quickly deceived and changed.

2. Who is the Man that is able to keep himself so warily, and with so much Circumspection in all Things as not to fall sometimes into some Deceit or Perplexity? But he that trusts in thee, O LORD, and seeks thee with a simple Heart, does not so easily fall; and if he lights into some Tribulation, in what manner soever he may be entangled therewith, he will quickly be rescued or comforted by thee; for thou wilt not forsake for ever him that trusts in thee. A trusty Friend is rarely to be found, that continues faithful in all the Distresses of his Friend. Thou, O LORD,

Chap.

LORD,
things,

3. O

said, M

ed upon

with m

give m

Who

provid

foresee

unlook

But v

miser

I so e

are M

many

whom

who

whic

And

[Ps.

fail,

not

app

tak

M

ven

an

th

LORD, thou alone art most faithful in all things, and besides thee there is no other such.

3. Oh! how wise was that holy Soul that said, *My Mind is strongly settled and grounded upon CHRIST.* [St. Agatha.] If it were so with me, the Fear of Man would not so easily give me trouble, nor flying Words move me. Who can foresee all things, or who is able to provide against all future Evils? If Things foreseen do yet often hurt us, how can things unlooked for fail of wounding us grievously? But why did I not provide better for myself, miserable Wretch as I am? Why also have I so easily given Credit to others? But we are Men, and are but frail Men, tho' by many we are reputed and called Angels. To whom shall I give Credit, O Lord? To whom but to thee? Thou art the Truth, which neither canst deceive nor be deceived: And on the other side, *Every Man is a Lyar,* [Ps. cxi.] infirm, unstable, and subject to fail, especially in Words; so that we ought not readily to believe even that which in appearance seems to sound well.

4. How wisely didst thou forewarn us to take heed of Men, *Mat. x. 17.* and that Man's Enemies are those of his Household, *ver. 36.* And that we are not to believe, if any one should say, *Behold here, or Behold there,* Matt. xxiv. I have been taught to my Cost,

Cost, and I wish it may serve to make me more cautious, and not increase my Folly: Be wary, (saith one) be wary, keep to thyself what I tell thee: And whilst I hold my Peace, and believe the Matter to be secret, he himself cannot keep the Secret which he desired me to keep, but presently discovers both me and himself, and goes his Way. From such Tales and such unwary People defend me, O LORD, that I may not fall into their Hands, nor ever commit the like. Give to my Mouth Truth and Constancy in my Words, and remove far from me a crafty Tongue. What I am not willing to suffer, I ought by all means to shun.

5. O how good a Thing and how peaceable it is to be silent of others, nor to believe all that is said, nor easily to report what one has heard; to lay one's self open to few; always to seek thee the Beholder of the Heart; and not to be carried about with every Wind of Words; but to wish that all Things both within and without us may go according to the Pleasure of thy Will! How secure it is for the keeping of heavenly Grace, to fly the Sight of Men; and not to seek those Things that seem to cause Admiration abroad; but with all Diligence to follow that which brings Amendment of Life and Fervour: To how many hath it been hurtful
to

to have their Virtue known, and over-hastily
praised ! How profitable indeed hath Grace
been kept with Silence in this frail Life,
which is all but Temptation and a Warfare?

C H A P. XLVI.

*Of having CONFIDENCE in GOD, when
WORDS arise against us.*

1. **S**ON, stand firm, and trust in me ; for
what are Words but Words ? They
fly thro' the Air, but hurt not a Stone. If
thou art guilty, think that thou wilt willing-
ly amend thyself : If thy Conscience accuse
thee not, think that thou wilt willingly suf-
fer this for GOD's sake. It is a small Mat-
ter that thou shouldst sometimes bear with
Words, if thou hast not as yet the Courage
to endure hard Stripes : And why do such
small Things go to thy Heart ; but because
thou art yet carnal, and regardest Man more
than thou oughtst ? For because thou art a-
fraid of being despised, thou art not willing
to be reprehended for thy Faults, and seekest
to shelter thyself in Excuses.

2. But look better into thyself, and thou
shalt find that the World is still living in thee,
and a vain Desire of pleasing Men : For when
thou art unwilling to be humbled and con-
founded for thy Defects, it is plain indeed
that thou art not truly humble, nor truly
dead to the World, nor the World crucified
to

to thee. But give ear to my Word, and thou shalt not value ten thousand Words of Men. Behold, if all should be said against thee, which the Malice of Men can invent, what Hurt could it do thee, if thou wouldst let it pass, and make no reckoning of it? Could it even so much as pluck one Hair away from thee?

3. But he who has not in his Heart *within* nor God before his Eyes, is easily moved with a Word of Dispraise: Whereas he that trusts in me, and desires not to stand by his own Judgment, will be free from the Fear of Men. For I am the Judge, and Discerner of all Secrets; I know how the Matter pass'd; I know both him that offers the Injury, and him that suffers it. From me this Word went forth; by my Permission it happened, *that out of many Hearts Thoughts may be revealed*, Luke ii. I shall judge the Guilty and the Innocent; but by a secret Judgment I would beforehand try them both.

4. The Testimony of Men oftentimes deceives: My Judgment is true, it shall stand and not be overthrown; it is hidden for the most part, and to few laid open in every thing; yet it never errs, nor can it err, tho' to the Eyes of Fools it seems not right. To me therefore must thou run in every Judgment, and not depend upon thy own Will.

For

For the just Man will not be troubled whatever happens to him from GOD, Prov. xii. And if anything be wrongfully pronounced against him, he will not much care; neither will he vainly rejoice, if by others he be reasonably excused; for he considers that I am he that searcheth the Heart and the Reins, Apoc. ii. who judge not according to the Face, nor according to human Appearance; for oftentimes that is found blame-worthy in my Eyes, which in the Judgment of Men is esteemed commendable.

5. O LORD GOD, the just Judge, strong and patient, who knowest the Frailty and Perverseness of Men, be thou my Strength, and all my Confidence, for my own Conscience sufficeth me not. Thou knowest that which I know not; and therefore in every Reprehension I ought to humble myself, and bear it with Meekness. Pardon me, I beseech thee in thy Mercy, as often as I have not done thus, and give me again the Grace to suffer still more. For better to me is thy great Mercy, for the obtaining of Pardon, than the Justice which I imagine in myself for the Defence of my hidden Conscience. Altho' my Conscience accuse me not, yet I cannot hereby justify myself; for setting thy Mercy aside, *no Man living shall be justified in thy Sight, Ps. cxlii.*

C H A P. XLVII.

*That all grievous THINGS are to be endured
for LIFE EVERLASTING.*

1. SON, be not dismayed with the Labours which thou hast undertaken for me; neither let the Tribulations which befall thee quite cast thee down; but let my Promise strengthen thee, and comfort thee in all Events. I am sufficient to reward thee beyond all Measure. Thou shalt not labour here long, nor shalt thou be always oppressed with Sorrows. Wait a little while, and thou shalt see a speedy End of all thy Evils. The Hour will come when Labour and Trouble shall be no more. All is little and short which passeth away with Time.

2. Mind what thou art about; labour faithfully in my Vineyard; I will be thy Reward. Write, read, sing, sigh, keep Silence, pray, bear thy Crosses manfully: Eternal Life is worthy of all these, and greater Combats. Peace shall come in one Day, which is known to the LORD: And it shall not be Day nor Night, viz. Such as is at present, but everlasting Light, infinite Brightness, steadfast Peace, and secure Rest. Thou shalt not then say, *Who shall deliver me from the Body of this Death*, Rom. vii. nor shalt thou cry out, *Woe to me, for that my sojourning is prolonged*, Ps. cxix. For Death shall be no more;

Chap. 4.
more; but
but blessed
lovely.

3. O
Crowns
great G
heard c
and in a
doubtles
elf do
rather f
to hav
Neither
Days o
to suffe
esteem
nothin

4.
Thing
deeply
so mu
painfu
Life i
gain
fore
all m
have
are c
at re
me

more; but never failing Health; no Anxiety, but blessed Delight, and a Society sweet and lovely.

3. Oh! if thou hadst seen the everlasting Crowns of the Saints in Heaven, and in how great Glory they now triumph, who appeared contemptible heretofore to this World and in a Manner unworthy even of Life, doubtless thou wouldst immediately cast thyself down to the very Earth, and wouldst rather seek to be under the Feet of all, than to have command so much as over one. Neither wouldst thou covet the pleasant Days of this Life, but wouldst rather be glad to suffer Tribulation for GOD's Sake, and esteem it thy greatest Gain to be reputed as nothing amongst Men.

4. Ah! if thou didst but relish these Things, and didst suffer them to penetrate deeply thy Heart, how wouldst thou dare so much as once to complain! Are not all painful Labours to be endured for everlasting Life? It is no small Matter to lose or to gain the Kingdom of GOD. Lift up therefore thy Face to Heaven. Behold I, and all my Saints with me, who in this World have had a great Conflict, do now rejoice, are comforted now, are now secure, are now at rest, and for all Eternity shall abide with me in the Kingdom of my Father.

C H A P.

*Of the Day of ETERNITY, and of the Mi-
series of this LIFE.*

I. **O** Most happy Mansion of the City above ! O most bright Day of Eternity, which knows no Night, but is always enlighten'd by the Sovereign Truth ; a Day always joyful, always secure, and never changing its State for the Contrary ! O that this Day would shine upon us, and all these temporal Things would come to an End ! It shines indeed upon the Saints, resplendent with everlasting Brightness ; but to us Pilgrims upon Earth 'tis seen only as afar off, and through a Glass.

2. The Citizens of Heaven know how joyful that Day is ; but the banish'd Children of *Eve* lament that this our Day is bitter and tedious. The Days of this Life are short and evil, full of Sorrows and Miseries : Where Man is defiled with many Sins, is ensnared with many Passions, attack'd with many Fears, disquieted with many Cares, distracted with many Curiosities, entangled with many Vanities, encompass'd with many Errors, broken with many Labours, troubled with Temptations, weakned with Delights, tormented with Want.

3. Oh ! when will there be an End of these Evils ? When shall I be set at Liberty from the wretched Slavery of Sin ? When,

Chap. 48

O LORD

the alone

in thee ?

ediment

le of M

solid P

nd alwa

without,

ESU, v

When t

Kingdo

me ? O

Kingdo

Belove

and ba

where

great I

4. C

swage

thee :

Com

enjoy

it. I

but t

tified

in M

Flesh

ject

I fig

som

ten

O LORD, shall I be so happy as to think of thee alone? When shall I to the full rejoice in thee? When shall I be without any Impediment in true Liberty, without any trouble of Mind or Body? When shall I enjoy a solid Peace, a Peace never to be disturbed and always secure, a Peace both within and without, a Peace every way firm? O good JESU, when shall I stand to behold thee? When shall I contemplate the Glory of thy Kingdom? When wilt thou be *all in all* to me? O when shall I be with thee in thy Kingdom, which thou hast prepared for thy Beloved from all Eternity? I am left a poor and banish'd Man in an Enemy's Country, where there are Wars every Day, and very great Misfortunes.

4. Comfort me in my Banishment, assuage my Sorrow; for all my Desire is after thee: And all that this World offers for my Comfort is burthenfome to me. I long to enjoy thee intimately, but cannot attain to it. I desire to cleave to heavenly Things, but the Things of this Life and my unmortified Passions bear me down. I am willing in *Mind* to be above all Things, but by the *Flesh* am obliged against my Will to be subject to them. Thus, unhappy Man that I am, I fight with myself, and am become burthenfome to myself, whilst the Spirit seeks to tend upwards, and the Flesh downwards,

5. Oh! what do I suffer interiorly, while in my Mind I consider heavenly Things, and presently a Crowd of carnal Thoughts offers to interrupt my Prayer? O my God, *remove not thyself far from me, and depart not in thy Wrath from thy Servant. Dart forth thy Lightning, and disperse them: Shoot thy Arrows, and let all the Phantoms of the Enemy be put to flight. Gather my Senses together to thee; make me forget all worldly Things; give me the Grace speedily to cast away and to despise all wicked Imaginations. Come to my aid, O Eternal Truth, that no Vanity may move me. Come heavenly Sweetness, and let all Impurity fly from before thy Face. Pardon me also, and mercifully forgive me the Times that I have thought of any thing else in Prayer besides thee. For I confess truly, that I am accustomed to be very much distracted: For oftentimes I am not there, where I am bodily standing or sitting, but am rather there where my Thoughts carry me. There I am where my Thought is: And there oftentimes is my Thought, where that is which I love. That thing most readily comes to my Mind which naturally delights me, or which thro' Custom is pleasing to me.*

6. For this Reason thou, who art the Truth, has plainly said, *Where thy Treasure is, there also is thy Heart*, Matt. vi. If I love

Heaven I w
I love th
city of th
iversity.
tion is c
the Flesh
ink of f
Things I
d hear,
of them.
See, O
Who offe
thro' Fer
the Flesh
clear'd up
and may
Choirs o
of the E

Of the I
great T

S O
a

thee fro
out of t
mayst c
any Sh
with a
spiratio
Divine

Heaven I willingly think of heavenly Things. If I love the World, I rejoice in the Prosperity of the World, and am troubled at its Adversity. If I love the Flesh, my Imagination is often taken up with the Things of the Flesh : If I love the Spirit, I delight to think of spiritual Things. For whatsoever Things I love, of the same I willingly speak and hear, and carry home with me the Images of them. But blessed is the Man who for thee, O LORD, lets go all things created : Who offers Violence to his Nature ; and thro' Fervour of Spirit crucifies the Lusts of the Flesh : That so his Conscience being clear'd up, he may offer to thee *pure* Prayer, and may be worthy to be admitted among the Choirs of Angels, having shut out all things of the Earth both from without and within.

C H A P. XLIX.

Of the Desire of Eternal LIFE : And how great THINGS are promised to them that fight.

SON, when thou perceivest a Longing after Eternal Bliss to be infused into thee from above, and that thou desirest to go out of the Dwelling of this Body, that thou mayst contemplate my Brightness, without any Shadow of Change ; dilate thy Heart, and with all thy Affection embrace this holy Inspiration. Return very great Thanks to the Divine Bounty, which deals so favourably with

with thee, which mercifully visits thee, and suddenly excites thee, and powerfully raises thee up, lest by thy own Weight thou fall down to the Things of the Earth. For thou art not by thy own Thought or Endeavour that thou attainest to this ; but only by the Favour of heavenly Grace and the Divine Visitation. That so thou mayst advance in Virtues, and greater Humility, and prepare thyself for future Conflicts, and labour with the whole Affection of thy Heart to stick close to me, and serve me with a fervant Will.

2. Son, the Fire often burns, but the Flame ascends not without Smoke. So also some People's Desires are on fire after heavenly Things, and yet they are not free from the Temptation of fleshly Affection : And therefore 'tis not altogether purely for God's Honour that they do what they so earnestly request of him. Such also is oftentimes thy Desire, which thou hast signified to be so strong. For that is not pure and perfect, which is infected with Self-interest.

3. Ask not what is delightful and commodious for thee, but what is pleasing and honourable to me : For if thou judgest rightly, thou oughtest to follow my Appointment rather than thy own Desire, and to prefer it before all that thou desirest. I know thy Desire, and I have often heard thy Sighs.

Thou

Thou wilt
liberty

GOD : 7

thy E

Country

not ye

Time,

labour

menishe

canst no

sovereig

LORD,

4. T

and exe

shall fo

fully sat

Courag

doing a

Nature

and be

must c

Inclina

art inc

others

would

others

sayst t

ask, a

not ob

5.

Men

Thou wouldst be glad to be at present in the liberty of the Glory of the Children of God : Thou wouldst be pleased to be now in thy Eternal Home, and in thy heavenly Country abounding with Joy : But that Hour is not yet come ; for there is yet another Time, *viz.* a Time of War, a Time of Labour and Trial. Thou wishest to be replenished with the Sovereign Good, but thou canst not at present attain to it. I am [that Sovereign Good] wait for me, saith the LORD, till the Kingdom of God comes.

4. Thou must yet be tried upon Earth, and exercised in many Things. Consolation shall sometimes be given thee ; but to be fully satisfied shall not be granted thee. Take Courage therefore, and be valiant as well in doing as in suffering Things repugnant to Nature. Thou must put on the new Man, and be changed into another Man. Thou must oftentimes do that which is against thy Inclination, and let alone that which thou art inclined to : That which is pleasing to others shall go forward, that which thou wouldst have shall not succeed : That which others say shall be hearken'd to ; what thou sayst shall not be regarded : Others shall ask, and shall receive ; thou shall ask, and not obtain.

5. Others shall be great in the Esteem of Men ; but of thee no notice shall be taken.

To others this or that shall be committed; but thou shalt be accounted fit for nothing. At this Nature will sometimes repine, and it will be no small Matter if thou bear it with Silence. In these and many such like Things, the faithful Servant of the LORD is used to be tried, how far he can renounce himself, and break himself in all Things. There is scarce any one Thing in which thou standest so much in need of mortifying thyself, as in seeing and suffering the things which are repugnant to thy Will; and especially when that is commanded which seems to thee incongruous and to little Purpose: And because being under Authority thou darest not resist the higher Power, therefore thou art apt to think it hard to walk at the Beck of another, and wholly to give up thy own Sentiment.

6. But consider, Son, the Fruit of these Labours, how quickly they will end, and their exceeding great Reward; and thou wilt not be troubled at them, but strongly comforted in thy Suffering. For in regard to that little of thy Will, which thou now willingly forsakest, thou shalt for ever have thy Will in Heaven. For there thou shalt find all that thou willest, all that thou canst desire. There thou shalt enjoy all Good without Fear of ever losing it. There thy Will being always one with mine shall desire nothing fo-

sign or
see, no
man sha
by Way
were to
by who
There I
which t
raise f
een sea
Throne
Fruit of
labour
ection

7. B
sent un
who it
but let
thy Su
thing
ake al
ere V
this, a
this T
thousa
Part,
in the
Pleasu
thou
Deat

sign or private. There no one shall resist thee, no Man shall complain of thee, no Man shall hinder thee, nothing shall stand in thy Way; but all that thou desirest shall be there together present, and shall replenish thy whole Affection, and satiate it to the full. There I will give thee Glory for the Affronts which thou hast suffer'd; a Garment of Praise for thy Sorrow; and for thy having been seated here in the lowest Place, a Royal Throne for all Eternity. There will the fruit of Obedience appear, there will the Labour of Penance rejoice, and humble Subjection shall be gloriously crown'd.

7. Bow down thyself then humbly at present under the Hands of all; and heed not who it was that has said or commanded this; but let it be thy great Care, that whether thy Superior or Inferior, or Equal desire any thing of thee, or hint at any thing, thou take all in good Part, and labour with a sincere Will to perform it. Let one Man seek this, another that; let this Man glory in this Thing, another in that, and be praised a thousand thousand Times: But thou, for thy Part, rejoice neither in this, nor in that, but in the Contempt of thyself, and in my good Pleasure and Honour alone. This is what thou oughtst to wish, that whether in Life, or Death, GOD may be always glorified in thee.

M

CHAP.

C H A P. L.

*How a desolate PERSON ought to offer himself
into the Hands of GOD.*

I. **O** LORD GOD, O Holy Father, be thou now and for ever blessed, for as thou wilt, so it has happened ; and what thou dost is always good. Let thy Servant rejoice in thee, not in himself, nor in any other ; for thou alone art true Joy, thou my Hope, and my Crown ; thou my Gladness, and my Honour, O LORD. What hath thy Servant but what he hath received from thee, and this without any Merit on his Side ? All Things are thine which thou hast given, and which thou hast made. *I am poor, and in my Labours from my Youth* ; and my Soul is grieved even unto Tears sometimes ; and sometimes is disturbed within herself by reason of the Passions which encompass her.

2. I long for the Joy of Peace, I beg for the Peace of thy Children, who are fed by thee in the Light of thy Consolation. If thou givest Peace, if thou infusest holy Joy, the Soul of thy Servant shall be full of Melody, and devout in thy Praise. But if thou withdraw thyself, as thou art very often accustomed to do, he will not be able to run in the Way of thy Commandments ; but rather must bow down his Knees, and knock his Breast, because it is not with him, as it was Yesterday and the Day before, when thy

Lamp shining
ered und
temptat

3. O j
raised, t
e tried.

fitting
ffer for
ays to

which th
that thy

oppressed
thee ; th
umbled

Men ;
with S
may rise

of a ne
O holy
such is
which

4. I
he sho
World

soever
it to f
and P

is don
LORD

learn

lamp shined over his Head, and he was covered under the Shadow of thy Wings from Temptations rushing in upon him.

3. O just Father, holy, and always to be praised, the Hour is come for thy Servant to be tried. O Father, worthy of all Love, it is fitting that thy Servant should at this Hour suffer something for thee. O Father, always to be honoured, the Hour is come, which thou didst foresee from all Eternity, that thy Servant for a short Time should be oppressed *without*, but always live *within* to thee; that he should be a little slighted, and humbled, and should fall in the Sight of Men; that he should be severely afflicted with Sufferings and Diseases; that so he may rise again with Thee in the Dawning of a new Light, and be glorified in Heaven. O holy Father, thou hast so appointed, and such is thy Will; and that has come to pass which thou hast ordered.

4. For this is a Favour to thy Friend that he should suffer and be afflicted in this World, for the Love of thee; how often soever, and by whomsoever thou permittest it to fall upon him. Without thy Counsel and Providence, and without Cause nothing is done upon Earth. *'Tis good for me, O LORD, that thou hast humbled me that I may learn thy Justifications, Ps. cxviii.* And cast
M 2 away

away from me all Pride of Heart and Presumption. 'Tis advantageous for me that Shame has covered my Face, that I may rather seek my Comfort from thee, than from Men. I have also learned hereby to fear thy impenetrable Judgment, who afflictest the Just together with the Wicked, but not without Equity and Justice.

5. Thanks be to thee, that thou hast not spared me in my Evils, but hast bruised me with bitter Stripes, inflicting Pains, and sending Distress both within and without. And of all Things under Heaven, there is none can comfort me but thou, O LORD, my GOD, the heavenly Physician of Souls; *who woundest and healest, bringest down to Hell, and ledest back again.* Thy Discipline is on me, and thy Rod shall instruct me.

6. Behold, dear Father, I am in thy Hands, I bow myself down under the Rod of thy Correction. Strike thou my Back and my Neck, that I may bend my Crookedness to thy Will: Make me a pious and humble Disciple of thine, as thou art wont well to do, that I may walk at thy Beck at all Times. To thee I commit myself and all that is mine, to be corrected by thee, 'tis better to be chastised here than hereafter. Thou knowest all and every thing, and there is nothing in Man's Conscience hidden from thee. Thou knowest Things to come, before they are

one; and
admonish
pass upon
obedient f
Tribulat
Do with
tis wha
Life, t
known

what I c
ought t
is most
that w
may d
Eyes.

the Si
Senter
of Me
But t
Matte
thing

in the
Wor
alone
repu
dece
Vai
We

alone; and thou hast no need to be taught or admonished by any one of those things that pass upon Earth. Thou knowest what is expedient for my Progress, and how serviceable Tribulation is to rub away the Rust of Sin. Do with me according to thy good Pleasure, 'tis what I desire, and despise not my sinful Life, to no one better or more clearly known than to thyself alone.

7. Grant, O LORD, that I may know what I ought to know; that I may love what I ought to love; that I may praise that which is most pleasing to thee; that I may esteem that which is valuable in thy Sight; that I may despise that which is despicable in thy Eyes. Suffer me not to judge according to the Sight of the outward Eye, nor to give Sentence according to the hearing of the Ears of Men that know not what they are about: But to determine both of visible and spiritual Matters with *true* Judgment, and above all things ever to seek thy Good-will and Pleasure.

8. The Sentiments of Men are often wrong in their Judgments; and the Lovers of this World are deceived in loving visible Things alone; what is a Man the better for being reputed greater by Man? One deceitful Man deceives another; the Vain deceives the Vain, the Blind deceives the Blind, the Weak the Weak, whilst he extols him; and

in Truth doth rather confound him whilst he vainly praiseth him : For how much each one is in thy Eyes, so much he is, and no more, saith the humble St. *Francis*.

C H A P. LI.

That we must practise ourselves in humble Works, when we cannot attain to high Things.

1. **S**ON, thou canst not always continue in the most fervent Desire of Virtues, nor stand in the highest Degree of Contemplation; but it must needs be that thou sometimes descend to lower Things, by reason of original Corruption; and that thou bear the Burden of this corruptible Life, even against thy Will, and with Irksomeness. As long as thou carriest about with thee thy mortal Body, thou shalt feel Trouble and Heaviness of Heart. Thou oughtst therefore, as long as thou art in the Flesh, oftentimes to bewail the Burden of the Flesh; for that thou canst not without Intermision be employed in spiritual Exercises and divine Contemplation.

2. At these times it is expedient for thee to fly to humble and exterior Works, and to recreate thyself in good Actions; to look for my Coming and my heavenly Visitation with an assured Hope; to bear with Patience thy Banishment, and the Aridity of thy Mind, till thou be visited again by me, and

and delivered from all Anguish. For I will make thee forget thy Pains, and enjoy internal Rest. I will lay open before thee the pleasant Fields of the Scriptures, that thy Heart being dilated, thou mayst begin to run the Way of my Commandments. And then thou shalt say that, *The Sufferings of this Time have no Proportion with the future Glory, which shall be revealed in us*, Rom. viii.

C H A P. LII.

That a MAN ought not to esteem himself worthy of Consolation; but rather guilty of Stripes.

1. **L**ORD, I am not worthy of thy Consolation, or any spiritual Visitation; and therefore thou dealest justly with me, when thou leavest me poor and desolate. For if I could shed Tears like a Sea, yet should I not be worthy of thy Comfort; since I have deserved nothing but Stripes and Punishments, because I have grievously and often offended thee, and in very many Things sinned against thee. Therefore according to all just Reason I have not deserved the least of thy Comforts. But thou, who art a good and merciful God, who wilt not have thy Works perish, to shew the Riches of thy Goodness towards the Vessels of Mercy, vouchsafest beyond all his Deserts to comfort thy Servant above human Measure; for thy Consolations are not like the Conversations of Men.

2. What

2. What have I done, O LORD, that thou shouldst impart any heavenly Comfort to me? I can remember nothing of Good that ever I have done; but that I was always prone to Vice, and very sluggish to Amendment. 'Tis the Truth, and I cannot deny it. If I should say otherwise, thou wouldst stand against me, and there would be none to defend me. What have I deserved for my Sins but Hell and everlasting Fire? In Truth, I confess that I am worthy of all Scorn and Contempt; neither is it fitting that I should be named among thy devout Servants. And tho' it goes against me to hear this, yet for Truth's sake I will condemn my Sins against myself, that so I may the easier obtain thy Mercy.

3. What shall I say, who am guilty, and full of all Confusion? I have not the Face to say any Thing but this one Word, I have sinned, O LORD, I have sinned; have Mercy on me, and pardon me. *Suffer me a little that I may mourn out my Grief, before I go to the darksome Land that is covered with the dismal Shade of Death, Job x.* What dost thou chiefly require of a guilty and wretched Sinner, but that he should heartily repent, and humble himself for his Sins. In true Contrition and Humility of Heart is brought forth Hope of Forgiveness; a troubled Conscience is reconciled; Grace that was lost is recovered;

Man is secured from the Wrath to come, and GOD meets the penitent Soul in the holy Kifs of Peace.

4. Humble Contrition for Sins is an acceptable Sacrifice to thee, O LORD ; of far sweeter Odour in thy Sight than the burning of Frankincense. This is also that pleasing Ointment which thou wouldst have to be poured upon thy sacred Feet ; *For thou never yet hast despised a contrite and humble Heart,* Ps. 1. Here is a sure Place of Refuge from the Face of the Wrath of the Enemy : Here whatever has been elsewhere contracted of Uncleanneſs is amended and washed away.

C H A P. LIII.

That the GRACE of GOD is not communicated to the Earthly-minded.

I. SON, my Grace is precious ; it suffers not itself to be mingled with external Things, or earthly Consolations. Thou must therefore cast away all Impediments of Grace, if thou desire to have it infused into thee. Chuse a secret Place to thyself ; love to dwell with thyself alone ; seek not to be talking with any one ; but rather pour forth devout Prayers to GOD, that thou mayst keep thy Mind in Compunction, and thy Conscience clean. Esteem the whole World as nothing ; prefer the Attendance on GOD before all external Things : For thou canst not both

both attend to me, and at the same time delight thyself in transitory Things. Thou must be sequestred from thy Acquaintance, and from those that are dear to thee, and keep thy Mind disengaged from all temporal Comfort. So the blessed Apostle *Peter* beseeches the Faithful of CHRIST to keep themselves as *Strangers and Pilgrims in this World* 1 Pet. ii.

2. Oh! how great Confidence shall he have at the Hour of his Death, who is not detained by an Affection to any thing in the World? But an infirm Soul is not yet capable of having a Heart thus perfectly disengaged from all Things; neither doth the sensual Man understand the Liberty of an internal Man. But if he will be *spiritual* indeed, he must renounce as well those that are near him, as those that are afar off; and beware of none more than of himself. If thou perfectly overcome thyself, thou shalt with more Ease subdue all Things else. The perfect Victory is to triumph over one's self: For he that keeps himself in Subjection, so that his Sensuality is ever subject to Reason, and Reason in all Things obedient to me, he is indeed a Conqueror of himself, and Lord of all the World.

3. If thou desire to mount thus high, thou must begin manfully, and set the Axe to the Root, that thou mayst root out and destroy thy secret inordinate Inclination to thyself, and

chap. 5

nd to all

ice, by

himself, i

be roo

vil bein

er, a gr

ntly en

labour to

fully ten

they rem

they be

But he

must m

ections

ed with

Of the

1. S

ry opp

hardly

and o

Men

somet

theref

many

2.

ensna

ways

walk

and to all selfish and earthly Goods. This vice, by which a Man inordinately loves himself, is at the Bottom of all that which is to be rooted out and overcome in us ; which Evil being once conquered and brought under, a great Peace and Tranquility will presently ensue. But because there are few that labour to die perfectly to themselves, and that fully tend beyond themselves ; therefore do they remain entangled in themselves, nor can they be elevated in Spirit above themselves. But he that desires to walk freely with me, must mortify all his wicked and irregular Affections, and must not cleave to anything created with any Concupiscence or private Love.

C H A P. LIV.

Of the different Motions of Nature and Grace.

1. **S**ON, observe diligently the Motions of *Nature and Grace* ; for they move very opposite Ways, and very subtilly ; -and can hardly be distinguished but by a spiritual Man, and one that is internally illuminated. All Men indeed aim at *Good*, and pretend to something of Good in what they do and say ; therefore, under the Appearance of Good many are deceived.

2. *Nature* is crafty, and draws away many, ensnares them and deceives them, and always intends herself for her End : But *Grace* walks with Simplicity, declines from all Shew
of

of Evil, offers no deceits, and does all things purely for GOD, in whom also she rests, as in her last End,

3. *Nature* is not willing to be mortified, or to be restrained, or to be overcome, or to be subject; neither will she of her own accord be brought under: But *Grace* studies the Mortification of her own self, resists Sensuality, seeks to be subject, covets to be overcome, aims not at following her own Liberty, loves to be kept under Discipline, and desires not to have the Command over any one; but under GOD ever to live, stand, and be; and for GOD's Sake is ever ready humbly to bow down herself under all human Creatures.

4. *Nature* labours for her own Interest, and considers what Gain she may reap from another: But *Grace* considers not what may be advantageous and profitable to herself; but rather what may be profitable to many.

5. *Nature* willingly receives Honour and Respect: But *Grace* faithfully attributes all Honour and Glory to GOD.

6. *Nature* is afraid of being put to Shame and despised: But *Grace* is glad to suffer Reproach for the Name of JESUS.

7. *Nature* loves Idleness and bodily Rest: But *Grace* cannot be idle, and willingly embraces Labour.

8. *Nature*

Chap. 5

8. *Nature*

curious

Things t

s pleased

le, reje

to be cla

9. *Nature*

rejoices

es, and

Word:

nal, and

Time,

Things

for the

Heaven

10.

ing to

Thing

and op

tented

give th

11.

own F

But C

renou

the D

about

12.

Com

lighte

8. *Nature* seeks to have Things that are curious and fine, and does not care for Things that are cheap and coarse: But *Grace* is pleased with that which is plain and humble, rejects not coarse Things, nor refuses to be clad in old Cloaths.

9. *Nature* has regard to temporal Things, rejoices at earthly Gain, is troubled at Losses, and is provoked at every slight injurious Word: But *Grace* attends to Things eternal, and cleaves not to those which pass with Time, neither is she disturbed at the Loss of Things, nor exasperated with hard Words; for she places her Treasure and her Joy in Heaven, where nothing is lost.

10. *Nature* is covetous, and is more willing to take than to give; and loves to have Things to herself; But *Grace* is bountiful and open-hearted, avoids Selfishness, is contented with little, and judges it *more happy to give than to receive*, Acts xx.

11. *Nature* inclines to Creatures, to her own Flesh, to Vanities, and to gadding abroad: But *Grace* draws to God, and to Virtues; renounces Creatures, flies the World, hates the Desires of the Flesh, restrains wandring about, and is ashamed to appear in publick.

12. *Nature* willingly receives exterior Comfort, in which she may be sensibly delighted: But *Grace* seeks to be comforted in

N

GOD

GOD alone, and beyond all Things visible to be delighted in the sovereign Good.

13. *Nature* doth all for her own Lucre and Interest; she can do nothing *gratis*, but hopes to gain something equal, or better, or Praise or Favour for her good Deeds; and covets to have her Actions and Gifts much valued: But *Grace* seeks nothing temporal; nor requires any other Recompence but GOD alone for her Reward; nor desires any thing more of the Necessaries of this Life than may be serviceable for the obtaining of a happy Eternity.

14. *Nature* rejoices in a Multitude of Friends and Kindred; she glories in the Nobility of her Stock and Descent: she fawns on them that are in Power, flatters the Rich, and applauds such as are like herself: But *Grace* loves even her Enemies, and is not puffed up with having a great many Friends, nor has any Value for Family or Birth, unless when joined with greater Virtue; she rather favours the Poor than the Rich; she has more Compassion for the Innocent than the Powerful; she rejoices with him that loves the Truth, and not with the Deceitful; she ever exhorts the Good to be zealous for better Gifts, and to become like to the Son of GOD by the Exercise of Virtues.

15. *Nature* easily complains of Want,
and

Chap. 4

nd of T
with Co

16. 2

nd for

Grace re

ll origi

Good to

refume

or pre

n every

mits he

the Div

17.

to hear

and to

the Ser

and to

and Ac

the he

because

ruption

Earth

Senses

Ostent

which

on;

Know

Profit

the de

longs

and of Trouble : But *Grace* bears Poverty with Constancy.

16. *Nature* turns all Things to herself, and for herself she labours and disputes : But *Grace* refers all Things to God, from whom all originally proceed ; she attributes no Good to herself, nor does she arrogantly presume of herself ; she does not contend, nor prefer her own Opinion to others ; but in every Sense and Understanding she submits herself to the Eternal Wisdom, and to the Divine Examination.

17. *Nature* covets to know Secrets, and to hear News ; is willing to appear abroad, and to have Experience of many Things by the Senses ; desires to be taken notice of, and to do such Things as may procure Praise and Admiration : But *Grace* cares not for the hearing of News and curious Things, because all this springs from the old Corruption, since nothing is new or lasting upon Earth ; she teaches therefore to restrain the Senses, to avoid vain Complacency and Ostentation, humbly to hide those Things which are worthy of Praise and Admiration ; and from every Thing, and in every Knowledge, to seek the Fruit of spiritual Profit, and the Praise and Honour of God ; she desires not to have herself, or what belongs to her, extolled ; but wishes that

GOD may be blessed in his Gifts, who bestows all out of meer Love.

18. This *Grace* is a supernatural Light, and a certain special Gift of GOD, and the proper Mark of the Elect, and Pledge of eternal Salvation, which elevates a Man from the Things of the Earth to the Love of heavenly Things, and of carnal makes him Spiritual: By how much therefore the more *Nature* is kept down and subdued, with so much the greater Abundance *Grace* is infused; and the inward Man, by new Visitations, is daily more reformed according to the Image of GOD.

C H A P. LV.

Of the Corruption of NATURE, and of the Efficacy of DIVINE GRACE.

1. **O** Lord, my GOD, who hast created me to thy own Image and Likeness, grant me this *Grace*, which thou hast declared to be so great, and so necessary to Salvation; that I may overcome my wicked *Nature*, which draws to Sin and Perdition: For I perceive in my Flesh the Law of Sin contradicting the Law of my Mind, and leading me Captive to obey Sensuality in many Things: Neither can I resist the Passions thereof, unless thy most holy *Grace* assist me, infused ardently into my Heart.

2. I

Chap.

2. I
a great
is always
the hav
and hav
nalty o
Mankin
thee wi
for the
ture;
itself,
for the
like a
our nat
a great
Good
Truth
fulfil
now e
forme

3.
cordin
with t
be go
Evil
And
whil
Henc
me,
Rom

2. I stand in need of thy *Grace*, and of a great *Grace*, to overcome *Nature*, which is always prone to Evil from her Youth; for she having fallen in *Adam*, the first Man, and having been corrupted by Sin, the Penalty of this Stain has descended upon all Mankind: So that *Nature* itself, which by thee was created good and right, is now put for the Vice and Infirmary of corrupt Nature; because the Motion thereof, left to itself, draws to Evil, and to Things below; for the little Strength which remains is but like a Spark hidden in the Ashes. This is our *natural Reason*, which is surrounded with a great Mist, having yet the Judgment of Good and Evil, and of the Distance of Truth and Falshood; tho' it be unable to fulfil all that it approves; neither does it now enjoy the full Light of Truth, nor the former Integrity of its Affections.

3. Hence it is, O my God, that according to the inward Man I am delighted with thy Law, knowing thy Command to be good, just, and holy, and reprovng all Evil and Sin, as what ought to be shunned: And yet in the Flesh I serve the Law of Sin, whilst I rather obey Sensuality than Reason. Hence it is, that *to will Good is present with me, but how to accomplish it I do not find*; Rom. vii. Hence I often make many good
N 3 Purposes;

Purposes ; but because I want Grace to help my Weakness, through a slight Resistance, I recoil and fall off. Hence it comes to pass, that I know the Way to Perfection, and see clearly enough what it is I ought to do ; but being pressed down with the Weight of my own Corruption, I rise not to those Things which are more perfect.

4. O how exceedingly necessary is thy Grace for me, O LORD, to begin that which is good, to go forward with it, and to accomplish it ! For without it I can do nothing: But I can do all Things in thee, when thy Grace strengthens me. O truly heavenly Grace, without which we have no Merits of our own, neither are any of the Gifts of Nature to be valued ! No Arts, no Riches, no Beauty or Strength, no Wit or Eloquence, are of any Worth with thee, O LORD, without Grace ; for the Gifts of Nature are common to the Good and Bad : But Grace or Divine Love is the proper Gift of the Elect, which they that are adorned with are esteemed worthy of eternal Life. This Grace is so excellent, that neither the Gift of Prophecy, nor the working of Miracles, nor any Speculation, how sublime soever, is of any Value without it : Nor even Faith, nor Hope, nor any other Virtues are acceptable to thee, without Charity and Grace.

5. O

5. O
the poor
derest h
humble
replenish
lest my
Dryness
that I

Grace
of tho
I be to
bulatio
Grace
gives
than
the V

6.
Teac
Hea
nished
Nur
Wh
Wo
not
ther
me
ten
thy

5. O most blessed Grace, which makest the poor in Spirit rich in Virtues, and renderest him that is rich in many good Things humble of Heart ; come, descend upon me, replenish me betimes with thy Consolation, lest my Soul faint through Weariness and Dryness of Mind. I beg of thee, O LORD, that I may find *Grace* in thy Sight ; for thy *Grace* is enough for me, tho' I obtain none of those Things which Nature desires. If I be tempted and afflicted with many Tribulations, I will fear no Evils, whilst thy *Grace* is with me ; she is my Strength ; she gives Counsel and Help ; she is more mighty than all my Enemies, and wiser than all the Wise.

6. She is the Mistress of Truth, the Teacher of Discipline, the Light of the Heart, the Comfort in Affliction, the Banisher of Sorrow, the Expeller of Fear, the Nurse of Devotion, the Producer of Tears. What am I without her but a Piece of dry Wood, and an unprofitable Stock, fit for nothing but to be cast away ! Let thy Grace therefore, O LORD, always both go before me and follow me, and make me ever intent upon good Works, thro' JESUS CHRIST thy Son. *Amen.*

C H A P. LVI.

*That we ought to deny ourselves, and to imitate
CHRIST by the CROSS.*

1. **S**ON, as much as thou canst go out of thyself, so much wilt thou be able to enter into me. As the desiring nothing abroad brings Peace at home, so the Relinquishing ourselves, interiorly joins us to God. I will have thee learn the perfect renouncing of thyself in my Will, without Contradiction or Complaint. Follow me, *I am the Way, the Truth, and the Life, St. John xiv.* Without *the Way* there is no going; without *the Truth* there is no knowing; without *the Life* there is no living. I am *the Way* which thou must follow; *the Truth* which thou must believe; *the Life* which thou must hope for. I am *the Way* inviolable, *the Truth* infallible, and *the Life* that has no End. I am the straightest *Way*, the sovereign *Truth*, the true *Life*, a blessed *Life*, an uncreated *Life*. If thou abide in my *Way* thou shalt know the *Truth*, and the *Truth* shall deliver thee, and thou shalt attain to *Life* everlasting.

2. *If thou wilt enter into LIFE, keep the Commandments, St. Luke ix.* If thou wilt know the *Truth*, believe me: *If thou wilt be perfect, sell all:* If thou wilt be my Disciple, deny thyself: If thou wilt possess a blessed

Chap. 56

blest Life
thou wilt
elf in this
me, bear
the Serva
Bliss and
3. Lo
is narrow
that I m
the Wor
than his
his Mast
ditate on
and tru
besides,

4. S
and hat
if thou
mandm
me; a
myself
make h
Father

5.
hast
may
ceive
Hanc
hast
good

bleſſed Life, deſpiſe this preſent Life : If thou wilt be exalted in Heaven, humble thyſelf in this World : If thou wilt reign with me, bear the Croſs with me : For none but the Servants of the Croſs find the Way of Blifs and of true Light.

3. LORD JESUS, forasmuch as thy Way is narrow, and deſpiſed by the World ; grant that I may follow thee, and be deſpiſed by the World : For the Servant is not greater than his LORD, neither is the Diſciple above his Maſter, St. *Matt.* vi. Let thy Servant meditate on thy Life, for there is my Salvation and true Holineſs : Whatever I read, or hear beſides, does not recreate nor fully delight me.

4. Son, now thou knoweſt theſe Things, and haſt read them all, happy ſhalt thou be if thou fulfil them. *He that hath my Commandments and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me ; and I will love him, and I will manifeſt myſelf unto him, St. John* xiv ; and *I will make him to ſit with me in the Kingdom of my Father,* Apoc. iii.

5. LORD JESUS, as thou haſt ſaid and haſt promiſed, ſo may it be indeed ; and may it be my Lot to merit it : I have received the Croſs, I have received it from thy Hand ; and I will bear it till Death, as thou haſt laid it upon me. Indeed the Life of a good religious Man is a Croſs, but 'tis a

Cross that conducts him to Paradise. We have now begun, it is not lawful to go back nor may we leave off.

6. Take Courage my Brethren, let us go forward together, JESUS will be with us; for JESUS's sake we took up this Cross; for JESUS's sake let us persevere in it; he will be our Helper, who is our Captain and our Leader. Behold, our King marches before us, who will fight for us. Let us follow him like Men of Courage; let no one shrink through Fear; let us be ready valiantly to die in Battle, and not to suffer our Glory to be blemished by flying from the Standard of the Cross.

C H A P. LVII.

That a MAN should not be too much dejected when he falls into some DEFECTS.

I. SON, Patience and Humility in Adversity are more pleasing to me, than much Consolation and Devotion in Prosperity. Why art thou disturbed at a little Thing said against thee? If it had been more, thou oughtest not to have been moved. But now let it pass, it is not the first, or any Thing new, nor will it be the last, if thou live long. Thou art valiant enough, as long as no Adversity or Opposition comes in thy Way: Thou canst also give good Advice, and encourage others with thy Words:

But

But when
to knock
thy Cou
Frailty,
small Di
as often
thee.

2. Pu
and if i
thee do
tangled
canst n
thou b
an Ind
press t
to con
dalize
is stin
and t
the I
the I
thee
in n
3
pre
is n
or
no
H
fa

But when any unexpected Trouble comes to knock at thy Door, then thy Counsel and thy Courage fails thee. Consider thy great Frailty, which thou often experiencest in small Difficulties. Yet 'tis done for thy good, as often as these or such like Things befall thee.

2. Put it from thy Heart the best thou canst; and if it has touched thee, yet let it not cast thee down, nor keep thee a long time entangled. At least bear it patiently, if thou canst not receive it with Joy. And tho' thou be not willing to hear it, and perceivest an Indignation arising within thyself, yet repress thyself, and suffer no inordinate Word to come out of thy Mouth which may scandalize the Weak. This Commotion which is stirred up in thee will quickly be allayed, and thy inward Pain will be sweetened by the Return of Grace. I am still living, saith the LORD, ready to help thee, and comfort thee more than before, if thou put thy trust in me, and devoutly call upon me.

3. Keep thy Mind calm and even, and prepare thyself for bearing still more. All is not lost, if thou feel thyself often afflicted or grievously tempted: Thou art Man and not GOD, thou art Flesh and not an Angel. How canst thou look to continue ever in the same State of Virtue, when this was not
found

found in the Angels in Heaven, nor in the first Man in Paradise? I am he that raises up, and saves them that mourn; and them that know their own Infirmary I advance to my Divinity.

4. O LORD, blessed be this thy Word, 'tis more sweet to my Mouth than Honey, and the Honey-comb. What should I do in my so great Tribulations and Anguishes, didst thou not encourage me with thy holy Words? What Matter is it how much or what I suffer, so I come at length to the Haven of Salvation. Grant me a good End, grant me a happy Passage out of this World: Be ever mindful of me, O my God, and direct me by the strait Road to thy Kingdom. *Amen.*

C H A P. LVIII.

Of not searching into high MATTERS, nor into the secret JUDGMENTS of GOD.

1. SON, see thou dispute not of high Matters, nor of the hidden Judgments of GOD; why this Man is left thus, and this other is raised to so great a Grace; or why this Person is so much afflicted, and that other so highly exalted: These things are above the reach of Man, neither can any Reason or Discourse be able to penetrate into the Judgments of GOD. When therefore the Enemy suggests to thee such things as these

these, or
into them
cxviii. T
ment is
Judgmen
themselve

not to b
prehensi

2. In
pute of
them is
greater

Thing
fitable

Vain-

Disser

to pre

prefer

and t

of no

for I

Peac

in tr

3

tow

tion

than

Sai

the

one

III. Chap. 58. of CHRIST. 213

these, or thou hearest curious Men inquiring into them, answer that of the Prophet, Ps. cxviii. *Thou art just, O LORD, and thy Judgment is right.* And again, Ps. xviii. *The Judgments of the LORD are true, justified in themselves.* My Judgments are to be feared not to be searched into, for they are incomprehensible to human Understanding.

2. In like manner do not enquire nor dispute of the Merits of the Saints, which of them is more Holy than the other, or which greater in the Kingdom of Heaven. These Things oftentimes breed Strifes and unprofitable Contentions, and nourish Pride and Vain-glory; from whence arise Envy and Dissentions, whilst this Man proudly seeks to prefer this Saint, and another Man is for preferring another. Now to desire to know and to search into such Things as these, is of no Profit, but rather displeaseth the Saints; for *I am not the GOD of Dissention, but of Peace,* 1 Cor. xiv. which Peace consists more in true Humility than in exalting one's self.

3. Some are carried by a Zeal of Love towards these, or those, with greater Affection; but this Affection is rather Human than Divine. I am he who made all the Saints; I gave them Grace, I have brought them to Glory, I know the Merits of every one of them, I prevented them by the Blessings

sings of my Sweetness. I foreknew my beloved ones before the Creation, I chose them out of the World, they were not beforehand with me to chuse me; I called them by my Grace, and drew them by my Mercy; I led them safe thro' many Temptations, I imparted to them extraordinary Comforts, I gave them Perseverance, I have crowned their Patience.

4. I know the first and the last, I embrace them all with an inestimable Love. I am to be praised in all my Saints, I am to be blessed above all Things, and to be honoured in every one of them whom I have thus gloriously magnified, and eternally chosen without any foregoing Merits of their own. He therefore that despises one of the least of my Saints honours not the greatest, for both little and great I have made; and he that derogates from any one of the Saints derogates also from me, and from all the rest of them in the Kingdom of Heaven. They are all one thro' the Band of Love; they have the same Sentiments, the same Will, and all mutually love one another.

5. And yet (which is much higher) they all love me more than themselves and their own Merits; for being elevated above themselves, and drawn out of the Love of themselves, they are wholly absorpt in Love of

me,

me, in
Enjoy
can div
for bei
burn v
not be
and se
fect an
forbea

They
own l
is ple

6.

in suc
know
spirit
cline
and l
fecte
conc
of H
Dist
gine
plat

7

tho
exc
thy
be
do

me, in whom also they rest by an eternal Enjoyment ; nor is there any thing which can divert them from me, or depress them ; for being full of the eternal Truth, they burn with the Fire of a Charity that cannot be extinguished. Therefore let carnal and sensual Men (who know not how to affect any thing but their private Satisfactions) forbear to dispute of the State of the Saints : They add and take away according to their own Inclination, and not according to what is pleasing to the everlasting Truth.

6. In many there is Ignorance, especially in such as being but little enlightened seldom know how to love any one with a perfect spiritual Love. They are as yet much inclined to such or such by a natural Affection and human Friendship ; and as they are affected with regard to Things below, they conceive the like Imaginations of the things of Heaven. But there is an incomparable Distance between what the Imperfect imagine, and what enlightened Men contemplate by Revelation from Above.

7. Take heed therefore, my Son, that thou treat not curiously of these Things which exceed thy Knowledge, but rather make it thy Business and thy Aim, that thou mayst be found, tho' it were the least, in the Kingdom of God. And if any one should know
who

who were more holy or greater in the Kingdom of Heaven, what would this Knowledge profit him, unless he would take Occasion from knowing this to humble himself in my Sight, and to praise my Name with greater Fervour? 'Tis much more acceptable to GOD for a Man to think of the Greatness of his own Sins, and how little he is in Virtues, and at how great a Distance he is from the Perfection of the Saints, than to dispute which of them is greater or less. 'Tis better to invoke the Saints with devout Prayers and Tears, and to implore their glorious Suffrages with an humble Mind, than by a vain Inquiry to search into their Secrets.

8. They are well and perfectly contented, if Men would but be contented, and refrain from their vain Discourses. They glory not of their own Merits, for they ascribe nothing of Goodness to themselves, but all to me; because I bestowed all upon them out of my infinite Charity. They are filled with so great a Love of the Deity, and such overflowing Joy, that there is nothing wanting to their Glory, nor can any Happiness be wanting to them. All the Saints, by how much they are the higher in Glory, by so much are they the more humble in themselves, and nearer to me, and better beloved by me. And therefore thou hast it written,

Apoc.

*Apoc. iv.
before God
the Lamb
and ever.*

9. M
Kingdom
they sha
the leas
the leas
because
Childre
thousan
shall d
*Who w
ven? M
Unless
Childr
of He
himself
the K*

IO
them
for th
will
also
here
Kin
ing
glad
Kir
the

Apoc. iv. That they cast down their Crowns before GOD, and fell upon their Faces before the Lamb, and adored him that lives for ever and ever.

9. Many examine who is greatest in the Kingdom of GOD, who know not whether they shall be worthy to be numbred amongst the least. 'Tis a great Matter to be even the least in Heaven, where all are great; because all shall be called and shall be the Children of GOD; The least shall be as a thousand, and a Sinner of an Hundred Years shall die. For when the Disciples asked, *Who was the greatest in the Kingdom of Heaven?* Matt. xviii. they received this Answer: *Unless you be converted, and become as little Children, you shall not enter into the Kingdom of Heaven. Whosoever therefore shall humble himself as the little one, he is the Greatest in the Kingdom of Heaven.*

10. Woe to them that disdain to humble themselves willingly with the little Children; for the low Gate of the heavenly Kingdom will not suffer them to enter thither. Woe also to the Rich who have their Comforts here, for when the Poor shall go into the Kingdom of GOD, they shall stand lamenting without. Rejoice you humble, and be glad you that are poor, for yours is the Kingdom of GOD; yet so, if you walk in the Truth.

C H A P.

That all HOPE and CONFIDENCE is to be fixed in GOD alone.

1. **L**ORD, what is my Confidence which I have in this Life? Or what is my greatest Comfort amongst all Things that appear under Heaven? Is it not thou, my LORD GOD, whose Mercies are without Number? Where was it ever well with me without thee? Or when could it be ill with me when thou wast present? I had rather be poor for thee, than rich without thee. I chuse rather to sojourn upon Earth with thee, than to possess Heaven without thee. Where thou art there is Heaven; and there is Death and Hell, where thou art not. After thee I have a longing desire, and therefore must needs sigh after thee, and cry and pray. In fine, I cannot fully trust in any one to bring me seasonable Help in my Necessities, save only in thee my GOD. Thou art my Hope, thou art my Confidence, thou art my Comforter, and most faithful above all.

2. All seek their own Interest; thou aimest only at my Salvation and Profit, and turnest all Things to my Good. And although thou expose me to various Temptations and Adversities, yet all this thou ordainest for my Good, who art wont to prove thy beloved Servants a thousand Ways: Under

der which
loved and
me with

3. In
put all
place all
I find all
I behold
multitud
nor can
cour, n
fitable A
ned cor
me, nor
me; i
strengt

4. I
our Pe
art ab
tribut
fore a
Heigh
and t
stiron
I lift
the l
Bles
Bles
bita
and

der which Proofs thou oughtest no less to be loved and praised, than if thou wert to fill me with heavenly Comforts.

3. In thee therefore, O LORD GOD, I put all my Hope and Refuge; in thee I place all my Tribulation and Anguish; for I find all to be infirm and unstable whatever I behold out of thee. For neither will a multitude of Friends be of any service to me, nor can strong Auxiliaries bring me any Succour, nor wise Counsellors give me a profitable Answer, nor the Books of the Learned comfort me, nor any Wealth deliver me, nor any secret and pleasant Place secure me; if thou thyself do not assist, help, strengthen, comfort, instruct and defend me.

4. For all Things which seem to be for our Peace and for our Happiness, when thou art absent, are nothing, and in Truth contribute nothing to our Felicity. Thou therefore art the Fountain of all Good, and the Height of Life, and the Depth of Wisdom; and to trust in thee above all things is the strongest Comfort of thy Servants. To thee I lift up mine Eyes; in thee, O my God, the Father of Mercies, I put my Trust: Bless and Sanctify my Soul with thy heavenly Blessing, that it may be made thy holy Habitation, and the Seat of thy eternal Glory; and let nothing be found in the Temple of thy

220 *The FOLLOWING, &c. Book III*

thy Dignity that may offend the Eyes of thy Majesty. According to the Greatness of thy Goodness, and the Multitude of thy tender Mercies, look down upon me, and give ear to the Prayer of thy poor Servant, who is in Banishment afar off from thee in the Region of the Shade of Death. Protect and defend the Soul of thy Servant amidst so many Dangers of this corruptible Life; and direct him in the Company of thy Grace, thro' the Way of Peace to the Country of everlasting Light. *Amen.*

The End of the Third Book.



THE

Follow

T
COM
heav

saith the

The B

for the

Take

be deliv

of me ;

He t

Blood,

The

Spirit

With

I.

ten

thy

THE
Following of CHRIST.

BOOK IV.
Of the SACRAMENT.

The Voice of CHRIST.

COME to me All you that labour, and are heavy burthened, and I will refresh you, saith the LORD, St. Matt. xi.

The Bread which I will give, is my Flesh, for the Life of the World, St. John vi.

Take and eat, This is my Body, which shall be delivered for you : Do this in Remembrance of me ; 1 Cor. xi.

He that eateth my Flesh, and drinketh my Blood, abideth in me, and I in him ; St. Jo. vi.

The Words which I have spoken to you are Spirit and Life ; St. John vi.

CHAP. I.

With how great Reverence CHRIST is to be received.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

I. THESE are thy Words, O CHRIST, the Eternal Truth, tho' not all delivered at one Time, nor written in one Place. Since therefore they are thy Words, and they are true, they are all
to

to be received by me with Thanks, and with Faith. They are thine, and thou hast spoken them; and they are also mine, because thou hast delivered them for my Salvation. I willingly receive them from thy Mouth, that they may be more inseparably ingrafted in my Heart. These Words, of so great Tenderneſs, full of Sweetneſs and Love, encourage me; but my own Sins terrify me, and my unclean Conſcience keeps me back from approaching to ſo great Myſteries. The Sweetneſs of thy Words invites me, but the Multitude of my Offences weighs me down.

2. Thou commandeſt me to approach to thee with Confidence, if I would have Part with thee, and to receive the Food of Immortality, if I deſire to obtain Life and Glory everlaſting. *Come, ſayſt thou, to me all you that labour, and are heavy burthened, and I will reſreſh you,* Matt. xi. O ſweet and amiable Word in the Ear of a Sinner, that thou, O LORD, my GOD, ſhouldeſt invite the Poor and Needy to the Communion of thy moſt ſacred Body! But who am I, O LORD, that I ſhould preſume to come to thee? Behold, the Heaven of Heavens cannot contain thee; and thou ſayſt, *Come you all to me.*

3. What means this moſt loving Condeſcenſion,

conſenſion, and
ſhall I dare
to myſelf of
me? Ho
House, wh
moſt graci
and the Ar
Awe, the
thou ſayſt.
LORD, di
be true?
it, who w

4. Be
hundred
that he v
how ſh
Hour to
verence
thy Ser
made a
he alſo
he mig
Law;
ſume f
the L
the wi
ſeven
ple fo
Days
Dedi

and pension, and so friendly an Invitation? How shall I dare to approach, who am conscious to myself of no Good, on which I can presume? How shall I introduce thee into my House, who have oftentimes offended thy most gracious Countenance? The Angels and the Arch-angels stand with a reverential Awe, the Saints and the Just are afraid; and thou sayst, *Come you all to me*. Unless thou, O LORD, didst say it, who could believe it to be true? And unless thou didst command it, who would dare attempt to approach?

4. Behold *Noah*, a just Man, laboured a hundred Years in the building of the Ark, that he with a few might be preserved; and how shall I be able in the Space of one Hour to prepare myself to receive with Reverence the Maker of the World? *Moses*, thy Servant, thy great and special Friend, made an Ark of incorruptible Wood, which he also covered with most pure Gold, that he might reposit therein the Tables of the Law; and shall I, a rotten Creature, presume so easily to receive thee the Maker of the Law, and the Giver of Life? *Solomon*, the wisest of the Kings of *Israel*, employed seven Years in building a magnificent Temple for the Praise of thy Name; and for eight Days together celebrated the Feast of the Dedication thereof: He offered a thousand
 pacifick

pacifick Victims, and brought in the Ark of the Covenant in a solemn Manner into the Place prepared for it, with sound of Trumpet and Jubilee. And I, a Wretch, and the vilest of Men, how shall I bring thee into my House, who can hardly spend one half Hour devoutly? And would to GOD I had ever once spent one half Hour as I ought!

5. O, my GOD, how much did they endeavour to do to please thee? Alas! how little it is that I do! How short a Time do I spend when I prepare myself to communicate? Seldom am I wholly recollected, very seldom free from all Distraction; and yet surely in the Life-giving Presence of thy Deity no unbecoming Thought should occur, nor any Thing created take up my Mind; for 'tis not an Angel, but the Lord of Angels, that I am to entertain.

6. And yet there is a very great Difference between the Ark of the Covenant with its Relicks, and thy most pure Body with its unspeakable Virtues; between those Sacrifices of the Law, which were Figures of Things to come, and the true Sacrifice of thy Body, which is the accomplishing of all those ancient Sacrifices.

7. Why then am I not more enflamed, considering thy venerable Presence? Why do I not prepare myself with greater Care to receive thy sacred Gifts, seeing that these an-

cient holy
Kings also a
ple, have sh
tion toward

8. The
before the

commemo

Times pa
fical Instru

lished Psal
with Joy

them play
the Grac

the Peop
whole h

blessing
so great

Remem
the Ark

to be th
and al
Presen

the m

9.
Relic

hear t
noble

their
And
Alta

ark of the Lord, ancient holy Patriarchs and Prophets, yea
o the Kings also and Princes, with the whole Peo-
rum of the People, have shewn so great Affection of Devo-
d the tion towards the Divine Worship?

8. The most devout King *David* danced
before the Ark of GOD with all his Force,
ever commemorating the Benefits bestowed in
Times past on the Fathers. He made mu-
en- sical Instruments of sundry Kinds; he pub-
now lished Psalms, and appointed them to be sung
do with Joy; he himself likewise often sung
ni- them playing upon his Harp, inspired with
ery the Grace of the Holy Ghost: He taught
vet the People of *Israel* to praise GOD with their
ty whole Heart, and to join their Voices in
or blessing and magnifying him every Day. If
or so great Devotion was then used, and such
s, Remembrance of the Praise of GOD before
e the Ark of the Covenant; how great ought
s to be the Reverence and Devotion which I
and all Christian People should have in the
Presence of this Sacrament, in the receiving
the most excellent Body of CHRIST?

9. Many run to sundry Places to visit the
Relicks of the Saints, and are astonished to
hear their wonderful Works; they behold the
noble Buildings of their Churches, and kiss
their sacred Bones wrapt up in Silk and Gold.
And behold, I have thee here present on the
Altar, my GOD, the Saint of Saints, the
O Creator

Creator of Men, and the LORD of Angels. Oftentimes in seeing those Things Men are moved with Curiosity, and the Novelty of the Sight, and but little Fruit of Amendment is reaped thereby ; especially when Persons lightly run hither and thither without true Contrition for their Sins. But here, in the Sacrament of the Altar, thou art wholly present, my God and Man, CHRIST JESUS ; where also the Fruit of eternal Salvation is plentifully reaped, as often as thou art worthily and devoutly received. And to this we are not drawn by any Levity, Curiosity, or Sensuality ; but by a firm Faith, a devout Hope, and sincere Charity.

10. O GOD, the invisible Maker of the World, how wonderfully dost thou deal with us ? How sweetly and graciously dost thou order all Things in favour of thy Elect, to whom thou offerest thyself to be received in the Sacrament ? For this exceeds all Understanding of Man ; this, in a particular Manner, engages the Hearts of the Devout, and enkindles their Love. For thy true Faithful, who dispose their whole Life to Amendment, by this most worthy Sacrament, frequently receive a great Grace of Devotion and Love of Virtue.

11. Oh ! the wonderful and hidden Grace of this Sacrament, which the Faithful of

CHRIST

Chap. 1.

CHRIST
such as a
In this Sac
and Virt
Beauty d
so great
the Abun
flowed,
also feel

12. Y
ed, that
gent, as
tion to
consists
shall be
and ou
our Pil
ment.
that m
Myfte
serves
ness a
doth
Gift,
Disre

1
only
by o
grea
affe

CHRIST only know ; but Unbelievers and such as are Slaves to Sin cannot experience. In this Sacrament is conferred spiritual Grace, and Virtue lost is repaired in the Soul ; and Beauty disfigured by Sin returns again. And so great sometimes is this Grace, that from the Abundance of the Devotion that is bestowed, not only the Mind, but the frail Body also feels a great Increase of Strength.

12. Yet 'tis much to be lamented and pitied, that we should be so lukewarm and negligent, as not to be drawn with greater Affection to the receiving of CHRIST, in whom consists all the Hope and Merit of those that shall be saved : For he is our Sanctification, and our Redemption ; he is our Comfort in our Pilgrimage, and the Saints eternal Enjoyment. 'Tis therefore much to be lamented, that many take so little notice of this saving Mystery, which rejoices Heaven, and conserves the whole World. Oh ! the Blindness and Hardness of the Heart of Man, that doth not more consider so unspeakable a Gift, and from a daily use of it falls into a Disregard for it.

13. For if this most holy Sacrament were only celebrated in one Place, and consecrated by one only Priest in the World, with how great Desire dost thou think would Men be affected to that Place, and to such a Priest of

GOD, that they might see the Divine Myſteries celebrated? But now there are made many Priests, and CHRIST is offered up in many Places, that the Grace and Love of GOD to Man may appear by so much the greater, by how much this sacred Communion is more spread throughout the World. Thanks be to thee, O good JESUS, our eternal Shepherd, who haſt vouchsafed to feed us poor Exiles with thy precious Body and Blood, and to invite us to the receiving of these Myſteries with the Words of thy own Mouth, saying, *Come to me all you that labour, and are burthened, and I will refresh you.* St. Matt. xi.

C H A P. II.

That the great GOODNESS and CHARITY of GOD is shewed to MAN in this SACRAMENT.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

I. O LORD, trusting in thy Goodness and in thy great Mercy, I come sick to my Saviour, hungry and thirsty to the Fountain of Life, needy to the King of Heaven, a Servant to his LORD, a Creature to his Creator, and one in Desolation to his loving Comforter. But whence is this to me, that thou shouldst come to me? Who am I, that thou shouldst give me thyself? How dares such a Sinner appear before thee? And how dost thou vouchsafe to come to a Sinner?

Thou

Thou knowest that he can entitle therefore thy Bountie give thee For 'tis not for me be better rity may perfectly is what mandated descension my Inic

2. C

JESU, with p Receiv no Ma shall I am ap never would can I my S thy ness and

Thou knowest thy Servant, and thou knowest that he has nothing of Good in him which can entitle him to this Favour. I confess therefore my Unworthiness, I acknowledge thy Bounty, I praise thy Goodness, and I give thee Thanks for thy excessive Charity: For 'tis for thy own Sake thou doest this, not for my Merits, that thy Goodness may be better known to me; that greater Charity may be imparted, and Humility more perfectly recommended. Since therefore this is what pleaseth thee, and thou hast commanded it should be so, thy merciful Condescension pleaseth me also; and I wish that my Iniquity may be no Obstacle.

2. Oh! most sweet and most bountiful JESU, how great Reverence and Thanks, with perpetual Praise, are due to thee for the Receiving of thy sacred Body, whose Dignity no Man can sufficiently express? But what shall I think of in this Communion, when I am approaching to my LORD, whom I can never reverence so much as I ought, and yet would gladly receive with Devotion? What can I think of better or more wholesome to my Soul, than to humble myself entirely in thy Presence, and extol thy infinite Goodness above me? I praise thee, O my GOD, and I extol thee for ever: I despise myself,

and subject myself to thee, casting myself down to the Depth of my Unworthiness.

3. Behold, thou art the Saint of Saints, and I am the Scum of Sinners: Behold, thou bowest thyself down to me, who am not worthy to look up to thee. Behold, thou comest to me; thou art willing to be with me; thou invitest me to thy Banquet, where thou wilt give me thy heavenly Food, and the Bread of Angels to eat; no other, verily, than thyself, the living Bread, who didst come down from Heaven, and who givest Life to the World.

4. Behold, whence Love proceeds, what a Bounty shines forth! how great Thanks and Praises are due to thee for these Things! Oh! how wholesome and profitable was thy Device in this Institution! how sweet and delightful this Banquet, in which thou givest thyself to be our Food! Oh! how admirable is thy Work, O LORD! how powerful thy Virtue! how infallible thy Truth! For thou hast spoken the Word, and all Things were made; and that has been done which thou hast commanded.

5. A wonderful Thing it is, and worthy of Faith, and exceeding all human Understanding; that thou, O LORD, my GOD, true GOD, and true Man, art contained whole and entire, under a small Form of Bread and Wine, and without being consum-

ed

ed art eat
LORD of
of no on
ment to
my Bod
and clea
celebrat
for my
princip
Honou

6. I
to thy
lar a C
Tears
Myfte
so oft
Rede
the M
CHR
ness
The
this
thy
fide
An
it c
del
fir
ha
C
ti

ed art eaten by the Receiver. Thou, the LORD of all Things, who standest in need of no one, hast been pleased by this Sacrament to dwell in us ; preserve my Heart and my Body without Stain, that with a joyful and clean Conscience I may be able often to celebrate thy sacred Mysteries, and to receive for my eternal Salvation what thou hast principally ordained and instituted for thy Honour and perpetual Remembrance.

6. Rejoice, O my Soul, and give Thanks to thy GOD for so noble a Gift, and so singular a Comfort, left to Thee in this Vale of Tears. For as often as thou repeatest this Mystery, and receivest the Body of CHRIST, so often dost thou celebrate the Work of thy Redemption, and art made Partaker of all the Merits of CHRIST ; for the Charity of CHRIST is never diminished, and the Greatness of his Propitiation is never exhausted. Therefore oughtest thou to dispose thyself for this by perpetually renewing the Vigour of thy Mind, and to weigh with attentive Consideration this great Mystery of thy Salvation. And as often as thou sayest or hearest Mass, it ought to seem to thee as great, new, and delightful, as if CHRIST that same Day, first descending into the Virgin's Womb, had been made Man ; or hanging on the Cross was suffering and dying for the Salvation of Mankind.

CHAP.

C H A P. III.

That it is profitable to communicate often.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

1. **B**EHOLD, I come to thee, O LORD, that it may be well with me by thy Gift, and that I may be delighted in thy holy Banquet, which thou, O GOD, in thy Sweetness hast prepared for the poor. Behold, in Thee is all whatsoever I can or ought to desire : Thou art my Salvation and Redemption, my Hope and my Strength, my Honour and my Glory. Make therefore the Soul of thy Servant joyful this Day, because, O LORD JESUS, I have lifted up my Soul to Thee. I desire at this Time to receive thee devoutly and reverently ; I would gladly bring thee into my House, that, like *Zacheus*, I may receive thy Blessing, and be numbered among the Children of *Abraham*, St. *Luke* xix. My Soul longs after thy Body ; my Heart aspires to be united with Thee.

2. Give thyself to me, and 'tis enough ; for besides thee no Comfort is available. Without thee I cannot subsist ; and without thy Visitation I cannot live : And therefore I must come often to thee, and receive for the Remedy of my Soul's Health ; lest perhaps I faint in the Way, if I be deprived of this heavenly Food. For so, O most merciful JESUS, thou wert pleased once to say, when
thou

Chap. 3.

thou hadst
curing fun
not send t
the Way.

who hast
the Com
the most
that shal
and Hei
necessar
and con
slack an
fessions.

Body, t
inflame
a long
Purpos

3.
Evil f
Medic
worfe
draw
in G
luke
lebra
this
Hel
nor
dea
M

thou hadst been preaching to the People, and curing sundry Diseases, St. *Matt.* xv. *I will not send them Home fasting, lest they faint in the Way.* Deal now in like manner with me, who hast left thyself in the Sacrament for the Comfort of thy Faithful. For thou art the most sweet Refection of the Soul, and he that shalleat thee worthily shall be Partaker and Heir of everlasting Glory. It is indeed necessary for me (who am so often falling and committing Sin, and so quickly grow slack and faint) by frequent Prayers and Confessions, and by the holy Communion of thy Body, to repair my Strength, to cleanse and inflame myself, lest perhaps by abstaining for a longer Time I fall away from my holy Purpose.

3. For the Senses of Man are prone to Evil from his Youth ; and unless thy divine Medicine succour him, Man quickly falls to worse. The holy Communion therefore withdraws him from Evil, and strengthens him in Good. For if I am so often negligent and lukewarm now, when I communicate or celebrate, what would it be if I did not take this Remedy, and should not seek so great a Help ? And although I am not every Day fit, nor well disposed to celebrate, yet I will endeavour at proper times to receive the Divine Mysteries, and to make myself Partaker of
so

so great a Grace. For this is the one principal Comfort of a faithful Soul, as long as she sojourns afar off from thee in this mortal Body; being mindful often of her GOD, to receive her Beloved with a devout Mind.

4. O wonderful Condescension of thy tender Love towards us, that thou O LORD GOD, the Creator and Enlivener of all Spirit, shouldst vouchsafe to come to a poor Soul, and with thy whole Divinity and Humanity satisfy her Hunger! O happy Mind, and blessed Soul, which deserves to receive thee her LORD GOD devoutly; and in receiving thee to be filled with spiritual Joy! Oh! how great a LORD does she entertain! how beloved a Guest does she bring into her House! how sweet a Companion does she receive; how faithful a Friend does she accept of! how beautiful and how noble a Spouse does she embrace, who deserves to be loved above all her Beloved, and beyond all that she can desire! Let Heaven and Earth, with all their Attire, be silent in thy Presence, O my dearest Beloved; for whatever Praise or Beauty they have, is all the Gift of thy Bounty; nor can they come up to the Beauty of thy Name, of whose Wisdom there is no Number.

C H A P. IV.

*That many BENEFITS are bestowed on them
who communicate devoutly.*

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

1. O LORD, my GOD, prevent thy Servant in the Blessings of thy Sweetness, that I may approach worthily and devoutly to thy magnificent Sacrament; raise up my Heart towards thee, and deliver me from this heavy Sluggishness; visit me with thy Grace, that I may taste in Spirit thy Sweetness, which plentifully lies hid in this Sacrament as in its Fountain; illuminate also my Eyes to behold so great a Mystery, and strengthen me to believe it with an undoubted Faith: For 'tis thy Work, not the Power of Man; thy sacred Institution, not Man's Invention: For no Man can be found able of himself to comprehend and understand these Things, which surpass even the Subtlety of Angels. What shall I therefore, an unworthy Sinner, who am but Dust and Ashes, be able to search into, or conceive of so high and sacred a Mystery?

2. O LORD, in the Simplicity of my Heart, with a good and firm Faith, and in Obedience to thy Command, I come to thee with Hope and Reverence; and I do verily believe, that thou art here present in the Sacrament, GOD and Man. 'Tis then thy Will
that

that I should receive thee, and through Love unite myself to thee. Wherefore I implore thy Mercy; and I beg of thee to give me for this a special Grace, that I may be wholly melted away in thee, and overflow with thy Love, and seek no more any Comfort from any thing else: For this most high and most excellent Sacrament is the Health of Soul and Body, the Remedy of all spiritual Diseases, by which my Vices are cured, my Passions are restrained, Temptations are overcome or lessened, a greater Grace is infused, Virtue receives an Increase, *Faith* is confirmed, *Hope* strengthened, *Charity* enflamed and enlarged.

3. For thou hast bestowed, and still oftentimes dost bestow, many good Things in this Sacrament to thy Beloved who communicate devoutly, O my GOD, the Support of my Soul, who art the Repairer of human Infirmary, and the Giver of all interior Comfort: For thou impartest unto them much Consolation, to support them in their many Troubles; and thou liftest them up from the Depth of their own Dejection to the Hope of thy Protection; and thou dost recreate and enlighten them interiorly with a certain new Grace; in such sort, that they who before Communion were anxious, and felt no Affection in themselves, afterwards being fed with this heavenly Meat and Drink, find themselves

themselves
thou art p
to the end
and plain
Infirmary
much th
Grace: I
and inde
servent,
he that
tain of S
him son
ing by a
some li
tain al
a Fire

4. V
Fulnes
I will
of this
from
Thir
dried
venly
Sera
ply
Hea
Div
Lif
wa

themselves changed for the better. And thou art pleased to deal thus with thy Elect, to the end that they may truly acknowledge, and plainly experience how great is their Infirmary, when left to themselves, and how much they receive from thy Bounty and Grace : For of themselves they are cold, dry, and indevout ; but by thee they are made fervent, chearful, and devout. For who is he that approaching humbly to the Fountain of Sweetness, does not carry away with him some little Sweetness ? Or who, standing by a great Fire, does not receive from it some little Heat ? Now, thou art the Fountain always full, and overflowing ; thou art a Fire always burning, and never decaying.

4. Wherefore, if I cannot draw out of the Fulness of the Fountain, nor drink my Fill, I will at least set my Mouth to the Orifice of this heavenly Pipe ; that so I may draw from thence some small Drop to refresh my Thirst, to the end that I may not be wholly dried up : And if I cannot as yet be all heavenly, and all on fire like the Cherubim and Seraphim, I will however endeavour to apply myself to Devotion, and to prepare my Heart for the acquiring some small Flame of Divine Fire, by the humble receiving of this Life-giving Sacrament. And whatever is wanting to me, O good JESU, most blessed

P Saviour,

Saviour, do thou in thy Bounty and Goodness supply for me, who hast vouchsafed to call all unto thee, saying, *Come to me all ye that labour, and are burthened, and I will refresh you* ; St. Matt. xi.

5. *Labour* indeed in the Sweat of my Brow, I am tormented with Grief of Heart, I am *burthened* with Sins, I am troubled with Temptations, and am entangled and oppressed with many evil Passions ; and there is no one to help me, no one to deliver and save me, but thou, O LORD GOD, my Saviour ; to whom I commit myself, and all that is mine, that thou mayst keep me and bring me to everlasting Life. Receive me for the Praise and Glory of thy Name, who hast prepared thy Body and Blood for my Meat and Drink. Grant, O LORD GOD, my Saviour, that with the frequenting this thy Mystery the Affection of my Devotion may increase.

C H A P. V.

Of the DIGNITY of the SACRAMENT, and of the PRIESTLY STATE.

The Voice of the BELOVED.

1. **I** F thou hadst the Purity of an Angel, and the Sanctity of St. *John the Baptist*, thou wouldst not be worthy to receive or handle this Sacrament : For this is not due to any Merits of Men, that a Man should consecrate and handle the Sacrament of

CHRIST,

CHRIST, of Angels. the Dignity which is alone, right Power to Body of Minister and by the But God the author and subject all that he

2. T dit to a cellent or any to app veren kind the I thou say I faith Go Ma ha bo an A

CHRIST, and receive for his Food the Bread of Angels. Great is this Myſtery, and great the Dignity of Priests, to whom that is given which is not granted to Angels: For Priests alone, rightly ordained in the Church, have Power to celebrate and to consecrate the Body of CHRIST. The Priest indeed is the Minister of GOD, using the Word of GOD, and by the Command and Institution of GOD: But GOD himself is there the principal Author and invisible Worker, to whom is subject all that he wills, and to whom obeys all that he commands.

2. Thou must therefore give more Credit to an Omnipotent GOD, in this most excellent Sacrament, than to thy own Sense, or any visible Sign: And therefore thou art to approach to this Work with Fear and Reverence. Take heed to thyself, and see what kind of Ministry has been delivered to thee by the Imposition of the Bishop's Hands. Lo! thou art made a Priest, and art consecrated to say Mass: See now that in due time thou faithfully and devoutly offer up Sacrifice to GOD, and that thou behave thyself in such Manner as to be without Reproof. Thou hast not lighten'd thy Burden, but art now bound with a stricter Band of Discipline, and art obliged to a greater Perfection of Sanctity. A Priest ought to be adorned with all Virtues,

and to give Example of a good Life to others: His Conversation should not be with the Vulgar and common Ways of Men, but with the Angels in Heaven, or with perfect Men upon Earth.

3. A Priest, clad in his sacred Vestments, is CHRIST's Vicegerent, to pray to GOD for himself, and for all the People, in a suppliant and humble Manner: He has before him and behind him the Sign of the Cross of the LORD, that he may always remember the Passion of CHRIST: He bears the Cross before him in his Vestment, that he may diligently behold the Footsteps of CHRIST, and fervently endeavour to follow them: He is marked with the Cross behind, that he may mildly suffer, for GOD's Sake, whatsoever Adversities shall befall him from others: He wears the Cross before him, that he may bewail his own Sins; and behind him, that thro' Compassion, he may lament the Sins of others and know that he is placed, as it were, a Mediator betwixt GOD and the Sinner: Neither ought he to cease from Prayer and the holy Oblation, till he be favoured with the Grace and Mercy which he implores. When a Priest celebrates, he honours GOD, he rejoices the Angels, he edifies the Church, he helps the Living, he obtains Rest for the Dead, and makes himself Partaker of all that is Good.

C H A P.

Chap. 7.

A PETITION

The

1. W

tremble

myself!

Life; a

incur th

do, O

seller in

2. D

appoint

Holy C

knowi

devout

profita

celebr

Of th

and

1. A

bra

me

and

and

C H A P. VI.

A PETITION concerning the EXERCISE proper before COMMUNION.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

1. **W**HEN I consider thy Greatness, O LORD, and my own Vileness, I tremble very much, and am confounded in myself ! For if I come not to thee, I fly from Life ; and if I intrude myself unworthily, I incur thy Displeasure. What then shall I do, O my GOD, my Helper, my Counsellor in Necessities ?

2. Do thou teach me the right Way ; appoint me some short Exercise proper for the Holy Communion : For 'tis necessary to know in what Manner I should reverently and devoutly prepare my Heart to thee, for the profitable receiving of thy Sacrament, or for celebrating also so great and divine a Sacrifice.

C H A P. VII.

Of the DISCUSSION of one's own CONSCIENCE and of a RESOLUTION of AMENDMENT.

The Voice of the BELOVED.

1. **A**BOVE all Things it behoves the Priest of GOD to come to the celebrating, handling, and receiving this Sacrament, with very great Humility of Heart, and lowly Reverence ; with an entire Faith, and with a pious Intention of the Honour of

GOD. Diligently examine thy Conscience, and to the best of thy Power cleanse and purify it by true Contrition and humble Confession ; so that there be nothing weighty to give thee Remorse, and hinder thy free Access. Repent thee of all thy Sins in general, and in particular lament and grieve for thy daily Offences ; and if thou hast Time, confess to GOD, in the Secret of thy Heart all the Miseries of thy Passions.

2. Sigh and grieve that thou art yet so carnal and worldly ; so unmortified in thy Passions ; so full of the Motions of Concupiscence ; so unguarded in thy outward Senses ; so often entangled with many vain Imaginations ; so much inclined to exterior Things, so negligent as to the interior ; so easy to Laughter and Dissolution ; so hard to Tears and Compunction ; so prone to Relaxation, and to the Pleasures of the Flesh ; so sluggish to Austerity and Fervor ; so curious to hear News, and to see fine Sights ; so remiss to embrace Things humble and abject ; so covetous to possess much ; so sparing in giving ; so close in retaining ; so inconsiderate in Speech ; so little able to hold thy Peace ; so disorderly in thy Carriage ; so over eager in thy Actions ; so greedy at Meat ; so deaf to the Word of GOD ; so hasty for Rest ; so slow to Labour ; so wake-
ful

ful to hear
in the Ser
end of th
tention ;
so tepid
of receiv
quite re
moved t
others ;
prehens
in Adv
Thing

3. I
and ot
Dislik
Resol
to ad
Resig
thysel
the A
local
thy
wor
Go
Sac

no
w
a
C

ful to hear idle Tales ; so drowsy to watch in the Service of GOD ; so hasty to make an end of thy Prayers ; so wandering as to Attention ; so negligent in saying thy Office ; so tepid in celebrating ; so dry at the time of receiving ; so quickly distracted ; so seldom quite recollected within thyself ; so easily moved to Anger ; so apt to take Offence at others ; so prone to judge ; so severe in reprehending ; so joyful in Prosperity ; so weak in Adversity ; so often proposing many good Things, and effecting little.

3. Having confessed and bewailed these, and other thy Defects, with Sorrow and great Dislike of thy own Weakness, make a strong Resolution always to amend thy Life, and to advance in Virtue : Then with a full Resignation, and with thy whole Will, offer thyself up to the Honour of my Name, on the Altar of thy Heart, as a perpetual Holocaust, by committing faithfully to me both thy Soul and Body ; that so thou mayest be worthy to approach to offer up Sacrifice to GOD, and to receive for thy Salvation the Sacrament of my Body.

4. For there is no Oblation more worthy, nor Satisfaction greater, for the washing away of Sins, than to offer up one's self purely and entirely to GOD, together with the Oblation of the Body of CHRIST, in the

244 . . . *The FOLLOWING* Book IV.
Mass and in the Communion. If a Man
does what lies in him, and is truly penitent;
as often as he shall come to me for Pardon
and Grace; *as I live, saith the LORD, who*
will not the Death of the Sinner, but rather that
he should be converted and live; I will no lon-
ger remember his Sins, but all shall be forgiven
him; *Ezek. xviii.*

C H A P. VIII.

Of the OBLATION of CHRIST on the CROSS,
and of the RESIGNATION of ourselves.

The Voice of the BELOVED.

1. **A**S I willingly offered myself to God,
my Father, for thy Sins, with my
Hands stretched out upon the Cross, and my
Body naked, so that nothing remained in me
which was not turned into a Sacrifice, for to
appease the Divine Wrath; even so must
thou willingly offer thyself to me daily in
the Mass, for a pure and holy Oblation, to-
gether with all thy Powers and Affection, as
heartily as thou art able. What do I re-
quire more of thee, than that thou endeavour
to resign thyself entirely to me? Whatsoever
thou givest besides thyself, I regard not; for
I seek not thy Gift, but thyself.

2. As it would not suffice thee, if thou
hadst all Things but me; so neither can it
please me, whatever thou givest, as long as
thou offerest not thyself. Offer thyself to
me,

Chap. 9
me, and
thy Offer
offered n
and have
for thy l
thou mi
wilt sta
not offe
fering
entire
all thy
tion of
desire
the R
and i
whol
stand
cann
fore
thyl

The

1.

fe
ti
in
t

Chap. 9. of CHRIST. 245

me, and give thy whole self for God, and thy Offering will be accepted. Behold, I offered my whole self to the Father for thee, and have given my whole Body and Blood for thy Food, that I might be all thine, and thou mightst be always mine : But if thou wilt stand upon thy own bottom, and wilt not offer thyself freely to my Will, thy Offering is not perfect, nor will there be an entire Union betwixt us. Therefore, before all thy Works, thou must make a free Oblation of thyself into the Hands of God, if thou desire to obtain Liberty and Grace : For the Reason why so few become illuminated and internally free, is because they don't wholly renounce themselves. My Sentence stands firm, *Unless a Man renounce all, he cannot be my Disciple* ; St. Luke xiv. If therefore thou desirest to be my Disciple, offer up thyself to me with all thy Affections.

C H A P. IX.

That we must offer OURSELVES and all that is OURS, to GOD, and pray for ALL.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

1. **L**ORD, all Things are thine that are in Heaven and Earth. I desire to offer up myself to thee as a voluntary Oblation, and to remain for ever thine. LORD, in the Sincerity of my Heart, I offer myself to thee this Day, to be thy Servant evermore,

to serve thee, and to become a Sacrifice of perpetual Praise to thee. Receive me with this Sacred Oblation of thy precious Body, which I offer to thee this Day in the Presence of thy Angels invisibly standing by, that it may be for mine, and all the People's Salvation.

2. LORD, I offer to thee all my Sins and Offences, which I have committed in thy Sight, and that of thy holy Angels, from the Day that I was first capable of Sin until this Hour, upon thy propitiatory Altar, that thou mayst burn and consume them all with the Fire of thy Charity, and mayst remove all the Stains of my Sins, and cleanse my Conscience from all Offences, and restore to me thy Grace, which I have lost by Sin, by fully pardoning me all, and mercifully receiving me to the Kiss of Peace.

3. What can I do for my Sins, but humbly confess them, and lament them, and incessantly implore thy Mercy for them? Hear me, I beseech thee, in thy Mercy, where I stand before thee, O my GOD: All my Sins displease me exceedingly; I will never commit them any more: I am sorry for them, and will be sorry for them as long as I live: I am willing to do Penance for them, and to make Satisfaction to the utmost of my Power. Forgive, O my GOD, forgive me my Sins, for thy holy Name's Sake: Save my Soul,

Soul, wh
precious
to thy
Hands.

Goodne
and Inic

4. I
tho' ver
mayst
thou m
accept
more;
am a
good

5.
of thy
Pare
all th
as fo
tors
and
Ma
to
Fl
ou
fe
B
fr
th
h

V. Chap. 9. of CHRIST 247

Soul, which thou hast redeemed with thy precious Blood. Behold I commit myself to thy Mercy. I resign myself into thy Hands. Deal with me according to thy Goodness, not according to my Wickedness and Iniquity.

4. I offer also to thee all the Good I have, tho' very little and imperfect; that thou mayst make it better and sanctify it; that thou mayst be pleased with it, and make it acceptable to thee, and perfect it more and more; and mayst moreover bring me, who am a slothful and unprofitable Wretch to a good and happy End.

5. I offer also to thee all the godly Desires of thy devout Servants, the Necessities of my Parents, Friends, Brethren, Sisters, and of all those that are dear to me; and of all such, as for the Love of thee have been Benefactors to me or others; or who have desired and begged of me to offer up Prayers and Masses for themselves and all that belonged to them; whether they live as yet in the Flesh, or whether they are now departed out of this World; that they all may be sensible of the Assistance of thy Grace, of the Benefit of thy Comfort, of thy Protection from all Dangers, and of a Deliverance from their Pains; and that being freed from all Evils, they may with Joy give worthy Thanks to thee.

6. I

6. I offer up also to thee my Prayers, and this Sacrifice of Propitiation for them in particular, who have in any thing wronged me, grieved me or abused me, or have done me any Damage or Displeasure: And for all those likewise whom I have at any Time grieved, troubled, injured or scandalized, by Words or Deeds, knowingly or unknowingly; that it may please thee to forgive us all our Sins and Offences one against another. Take, O LORD, from our Hearts all Jealousy, Indignation, Wrath and Contention, and whatsoever may hurt Charity, and lessen brotherly Love. Have Mercy, O LORD, have Mercy on those that crave thy Mercy; give Grace to them that stand in need thereof; and grant that we may be worthy to enjoy thy Grace, and that we may attain to Life everlasting. *Amen.*

C H A P. X.

That the HOLY COMMUNION is not lightly to be FORBORNE.

The Voice of the BELOVED.

1. **T**HOU oughtest often to have Recourse to the Fountain of Grace, and of Divine Mercy; to the Fountain of all Goodness and all Purity; that thou mayst be heal'd of thy Passions and Vices, and be made more strong and vigilant against all the Temptations and Deceits of the Devil.

The

Chap. 1
The End
vantage
Commun
cations,
and his
from it.

2. F
selves f
the gre
Spirit,
mongst
with h
them
may
faults
may
at lea
there
and
abor
turn
isto
Cor
and
too
an
Co
th
So

V. Chap. 10. of CHRIST. 249

The Enemy, knowing the very great Advantage and Remedy which is in the Holy Communion, strives by all Means and Occasions, as much as he is able to withdraw and hinder Faithful and devout Persons from it.

2. For when some are preparing themselves for the sacred Communion, they suffer the greater assaults of *Satan*. This wicked Spirit, as it is written in *Job*, cometh amongst the Sons of God to trouble them with his accustomed Malice, or to make them over-fearful and perplexed, that so he may diminish their Devotion, or by his Assaults take away their Faith; if haply they may altogether forbear the Communion, or at least approach to it with Tepidity. But there is no heed to be taken of his Wiles, and Suggestions, be they never so filthy and abominable; but all his Attempts are to be turned back upon his own Head. The Wretch is to be contemned and scorned, nor is the Holy Communion to be omitted for his Assaults, and the Commotions which he causeth.

3. Oftentimes also a Person is hindered by too great Solitude for obtaining Devotion, and a certain Anxiety about making his Confession. Follow herein the Counsel of the Wise, and put away all Anxiety and Scruple; for it hindereth the Grace of God,
and

and destroyeth Devotion. Leave not the Holy Communion for every small Trouble and Vexation, but go quickly to Confession, and willingly forgive others their Offences against Thee. And if thou hast offended any one, humbly crave Pardon, and God will readily forgive thee.

4. What doth it avail to delay thy Confession for a long Time? or to put off the Holy Communion? Purge thyself with speed, spit out the Venom presently, make haste to take this *Remedy*, and thou shalt find it to be better with thee, than if thou hadst deferred it for a long Time. If thou lettest it alone To-day for this Cause, perhaps To-morrow a greater will fall out, and so thou mayst be hindered a long Time from Communion, and become more unfit: With all possible Speed shake off this Heaviness and Sloth, for 'tis to no Purpose to continue long in Disquiet, to pass a long Time in Trouble, and for these daily Impediments to withdraw thyself from these *Divine Mysteries*. Yea, it is very hurtful to defer the Communion long; for this usually causeth a great Lukewarmness and Numbness. Alas! some tepid and dissolute People are willing to put off their Confession, and desire that their Communion should be deferred, lest they should be obliged thereby to keep a stricter Watch over themselves.

5. Ah!

5. Ah
how wea
put by th
py is he
liveth, a
Purity a
communi
ted, and
sometim
or by R
is to be
if Sloth
self, an
will aff
he chie

6. A
must y
ous In
not lo
every
receiv
hibiti
yet c
point
with
his!
and
fort
is in
eth

5. Ah ! how little is their Love of God, how weak is their Devotion, who so easily put by the sacred Communion? How happy is he, and acceptable to God, who so liveth, and keepeth his Conscience in such Purity as to be ready and well disposed to communicate every Day, if it were permitted, and he might do it without Note. If sometimes a Person abstains out of Humility, or by Reason of some lawful Impediment, he is to be commended for his Reverence. But if Sloth steal upon him, he must stir up himself, and do what lieth in him ; and God will assist his Desire for his good Will, which he chiefly regards.

6. And when he is lawfully hindred, he must yet always have a good Will and a pious Intention to communicate, and so he shall not lose the Fruit of the Sacrament. For every devout Man may every Day and Hour receive CHRIST spiritually without any Prohibition, and with Profit to his Soul : And yet on certain Days, and at the Time appointed, he ought to receive sacramentally with an affectionate Reverence the Body of his Redeemer, and rather aim at the Praise and Honour of God than seek his own Comfort. For he communicates mystically, and is invisibly fed, as often as he devoutly calleth to mind the Mystery of the Incarnation
of

of CHRIST, and his Passion; and is inflamed with the Love of him.

7. He that prepareth not himself, but when a Festival draweth near, or when Custom compelleth him thereunto, shall often be unprepared. Blessed is he that offereth himself up as an Holocaust to the LORD, as often as he celebrates or communicates. Be neither too long nor too hasty in celebrating, but observe the good common Manner of those with whom thou livest. Thou oughtest not to be tedious and troublesome to others, but to keep the common Way, according to the Appointment of Superiors; and rather suit thyself to the Profit of others, than to thine own Devotion or Affection.

C H A P. XI.

That the BODY of CHRIST and the HOLY SCRIPTURE are most necessary to a faithful SOUL. The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

I. O Sweetest LORD JESUS, how great Sweetness hath a devout Soul that feasteth with thee in thy Banquet; where there is no other Meat set before her to be eaten but thyself her only beloved, and most to be desired above all the Desires of her Heart! And to me indeed it would be delightful to pour out Tears in thy Presence, with the whole Affection of my Heart, and like the devout *Magdalen* to wash thy Feet with my Tears.

Chap.

Tears.

is this

Surely

Angels.

ed, and

the Sac

der and

2. F

Bright

able to

subsist

Majest

est to

under

dore h

ven;

witho

Light

Day

the S

that

Sacra

heav

med

out

his

form

com

Go

nin

Tears. But where is this Devotion? Where is this so plentiful shedding of holy Tears? Surely in the Sight of thee, and of thy holy Angels, my whole Heart ought to be inflamed, and to weep for Joy. For I have thee in the Sacrament truly present, tho' hidden under another Form.

2. For to behold thee in thine own divine Brightness, is what mine Eyes would not be able to endure, neither could the whole World subsist in the Splendor of the Glory of thy Majesty. In this therefore thou condescendest to my Weakness, that thou hidest thyself under the Sacrament. I truly have and adore him whom the Angels adore in Heaven; but I as yet in *Faith*, they by *Sight* and without a Veil. I must be content with the Light of *true Faith*, and walk therein till the Day of eternal Brightness break forth, and the Shades of Figures pass away. But when that which is perfect shall come, the Use of Sacraments shall cease: For the Blessed in heavenly Glory stand not in need of the Remedy of Sacraments. For they rejoice without End in the Presence of God, beholding his Glory Face to Face; and being transformed from Glory into the Glory of the incomprehensible Deity, they taste the *Word of God made Flesh*, as he was from the Beginning, and as he remaineth for ever.

3. When

3. When I call to mind these Wonders, even every spiritual Comfort becomes grievously tedious to me; because as long as I behold not my LORD openly in his Glory, I make no account of whatsoever I see and hear in the World. Thou art my Witness, O GOD, that not one thing can comfort me, nor any thing created give me Rest, but only thou, my GOD; whom I desire for ever to contemplate. But this is not possible whilst I remain in this mortal Life. And therefore I must frame myself to much patience, and submit myself to thee in all my Desires. For thy Saints also, O LORD, who now rejoice with thee in the Kingdom of Heaven, whilst they were living, expected in Faith and great Patience, the Coming of thy Glory. What they believed, I believe: What they hoped for, I hope for; and whither they are come, I trust that I also through thy Grace shall come. In the mean time I will walk in Faith, strengthened by the Examples of thy Saints. I shall have moreover for my Comfort, and the Direction of my Life, thy holy Books; and above all these Things, thy most holy Body for a singular Remedy and Refuge.

4. For in this Life I find there are two Things especially necessary for me, without which this miserable Life would be insupportable. Whilst I am kept in the Prison of

this Bod
Things
therefor
sacred B
and Bo
Light t
two I
GOD i
crame
may b
one Si
of the
holy A
the pr
is tha
Doctr
leadin
Holie
LOR
Tab
ford
Prop
5
and
Lov
gre
us
thy
all
rep

V. Chap. II. of CHRIST. 255

this Body, I acknowledge myself to need two Things, to wit, *Food* and *Light*. Thou hast therefore given to me, weak as I am, thy sacred Body for the Nourishment of my Soul and Body, and thou hast set *thy Word as a Light to my Feet*, Ps. cxviii. Without these two I could not well live, for the Word of God is the Light of my Soul, and thy Sacrament is the *Bread of Life*. These also may be called the two Tables set on the one Side, and on the other, in the Store-house of the *holy Church*. One is the Table of the *holy Altar*, having the *holy Bread*, that is, the precious *Body of CHRIST*. The other is that of the *divine Law*, containing *holy Doctrine*, teaching the *right Faith*, and firmly leading even within the *Veil*, where are the *Holies of Holies*: Thanks be to Thee, O LORD JESUS, Light of eternal Light, for the Table of *holy Doctrine* which thou hast afforded us by the Ministry of thy Servants, the Prophets, and Apostles, and other Teachers.

5. Thanks be to Thee, O thou Creator and Redeemer of Men, who to manifest thy Love to the whole World, hast prepared a great Supper, wherein thou hast set before us to be eaten, not the typical Lamb, but thy most sacred Body and Blood: Rejoicing all the Faithful with thy holy Banquet, and replenishing them with the Cup of Salvati-
on,

256 *The* FOLLOWING Book IV.

on, in which are all the Delights of Paradise; and the holy Angels do feast with us, but with a more happy Sweetness.

6. O how great and honourable is the Office of Priests, to whom it is given to consecrate with sacred Words the LORD of Majesty; to bless *him* with their Lips to hold *him* with their Hand, to receive *him* with their own Mouth, and to administer *him* to others! Oh! how clean ought those Hands to be, how pure that Mouth, how holy that Body, how unspotted the Heart of a *Priest*, into whom the Author of Purity so often enters: From the Mouth of a *Priest* nothing but what is *holy*, no Word but what is *good* and *profitable* ought to proceed, who so often receives the Sacrament of CHRIST.

7. His *Eyes* ought to be *simple* and *chaste*, which are used to behold the *Body* of CHRIST; his Hands *pure* and lifted up to Heaven, which use to handle the Creator of Heaven and Earth. Unto the Priests especially it is said in the Law, *Levit. xix. 20. Be you holy, for I the LORD your GOD am holy.*

8. Let thy Grace, O Almighty GOD, assist us, that we who have undertaken the Office of Priesthood may serve Thee worthily and devoutly in all Purity and good Conscience. And if we cannot live in so great Innocency as we ought, grant us at least

Chap.
least dul
commit
the Re
more fe

That be
prepa
DIL

I. I A
and the
for me
make t
Discip
wilt h
with t
make
shut c
mult
the H
the E
prepa
dearl
fecti
2.
suffi
any
prep
thin

least duly to bewail the Sins which we have committed; and in the Spirit of Humility, and the Resolution of a good Will, to serve Thee more fervently for the Time to come.

C H A P. XII.

That he who is to COMMUNICATE ought to prepare himself for CHRIST with great DILIGENCE.

The Voice of the BELOVED.

1. **I** AM the Lover of Purity, and the Giver of all Holiness. I seek a pure Heart, and there is the Place of my Rest. Make ready for me a large upper Room furnished, and I will make the Pasch with Thee, together with my Disciples, Mark xiv. Luke xxii. If thou wilt have me come to thee, and remain with thee; purge out the old Leaven, and make clean the Habitation of thy Heart; shut out the whole World, and all the Tumult of Vices; sit like a Sparrow solitary on the House Top, and think of thy Excesses in the Bitterness of thy Soul. For every Lover prepareth the best and fairest Room for his dearly beloved; and hereby is known the Affection of him that entertaineth his beloved.

2. Know nevertheless, that thou canst not sufficiently prepare thyself by the Merit of any Action of thine, although thou shouldst prepare thyself a whole Year together, and think of nothing else. But 'tis of my meer Goodness

Goodness and Grace that thou art suffered to come to my Table ; as if a Beggar should be invited to Dinner by a rich Man, who hath nothing else to return him for his Benefits, but to humble himself, and to give him thanks. Do what lieth in thee, and do it diligently ; not for Custom, nor for Necessity ; but with Fear and Reverence, and Affection receive the Body of thy beloved LORD, thy GOD, who vouchsafeth to come to thee. I am he that have invited thee, I have commanded it to be done, I will supply what is wanting in thee, come and receive me.

3. When I bestow the Grace of Devotion give Thanks to thy GOD, not for that thou art worthy, but because I have had Mercy on thee. If thou hast it not, but rather findest thyself dry, continue in Prayer, sigh and knock and give not over till thou receivest some Crum or Drop of saving Grace. Thou hast need of me, not I of thee, neither dost thou come to sanctify me, but I come to sanctify and make thee better ; thou comest that thou mayst be sanctified by me, and united to me ; that thou mayst receive new Grace, and be inflamed a-new to Amendment. Neglect not this Grace, but prepare thy Heart with all Diligence, and bring thy beloved into thee.

4. But thou oughtest not only to prepare thyself

thyself
careful
receiving
fully g
quired
fore :
best P
greater
much
self ou
much
GOD
canno
ought
mayst
tude,

That
wh
the

I. V
who
Soul
spise
rega
me,
spea
que

thyself to Devotion before Communion, but carefully also to keep thyself therein after receiving the Sacrament ; neither is the carefully guarding of thyself afterwards less required than the devoutly preparing thyself before : For a good Guard afterwards is the best Preparation again for the Obtaining of greater Grace. For what renders a Man very much indisposed is, if he presently pour himself out upon exterior Comforts. Beware of much Talk, remain in Secret, and enjoy thy God ; for thou hast him whom all the World cannot take from thee. I am he to whom thou oughtst to give thy whole self ; so that thou mayst henceforward live, without all Solitude, not in thyself, but in me.

C H A P. XIII.

That a devout SOUL ought to desire with her whole HEART to be united to CHRIST in the SACRAMENT.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

I. **W**HO will give me, O LORD, to find thee alone, that I may open my whole Heart to thee, and enjoy thee as my Soul desireth ; and that no one may now despise me, nor any thing created move me or regard me ; but thou alone mayst speak to me, and I to thee ; as the *Beloved* is wont to speak to his *Beloved*, and a Friend to banquet with his Friend. This I pray for, this

I

I desire, that I may be wholly united to thee, and may withdraw my Heart from all created Things ; and by the Holy Communion, and often celebrating, may more and more learn to relish heavenly and eternal Things. Ah ! LORD GOD, when shall I be wholly united to thee, and absorpt in thee, and altogether forgetful of myself ; thou in me, and I in thee ; and so grant us both to continue in one.

2. Verily, thou art my *Beloved*, the choicest amongst Thousands, in whom my Soul is well pleased to dwell all the Days of her Life : Verily, thou art my *Peace-maker*, in whom is sovereign *Peace* and true *Rest* : out of whom is *Labour* and *Sorrow*, and endless *Misery* : Thou art, in Truth, a hidden God, and thy Counsel is not with the Wicked ; but thy Conversation is with the Humble and the Simple. Oh ! how sweet is thy Spirit, O LORD, who to shew thy Sweetness towards thy Children, vouchsafest to feed them with the most delicious Bread which cometh down from Heaven ! Surely, there is no other Nation so great, that hath their God so nigh to them, as thou our GOD art present to all thy Faithful ; to whom, for their daily Comfort, and for the raising up their Hearts to Heaven, thou givest thyself to be eaten and enjoyed.

3. For

Chap.

3. F
noured
Creatu
vout So
he may
unspeak
descend
bestow
I make
so extr
thing t
better,
to Go
all tha
when
my G
wilt b
I will
to ren
with
my H

Of th
so

I. C
laid
I ren

3. For what other Nation is there so honoured as the Christian People? Or what Creature under Heaven so beloved as a devout Soul, into whom God cometh, that he may feed her with his glorious Flesh? Oh! unspeakable Grace! Oh! wonderful Condescension! Oh! infinite Love singularly bestowed upon Man! But what Return shall I make to the LORD for this Grace, and for so extraordinary a Charity? There is nothing that I can give him that will please him better, than if I give up my Heart entirely to God, and unite it closely to him. Then all that is within me shall rejoice exceedingly when my Soul shall be perfectly united to my God: Then will he say to me, If thou wilt be with me, I will be with thee; and I will answer him, Vouchsafe, O LORD, to remain with me, and I will willingly be with thee. This is my whole Desire, that my Heart may be united to thee.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the ardent DESIRE of some devout PERSONS to receive the BODY of CHRIST.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

1. **O**H! how great is the Abundance of thy Sweetness, O LORD, which thou hast laid up for them that fear thee; Ps. xxx. When I remember some devout Persons, who come

to thy Sacrament with the greatest Devotion and Affection, I am often confounded and ashamed within myself, that I approach so tepidly and coldly to thy Altar, and to the Table of the Holy Communion; that I remain so dry, and without Affection of Heart; that I am not wholly set on fire in thy Presence, O my God; nor so earnestly drawn and affected, as many devout Persons have been, who, out of a vehement desire of Communion, and a sensible Love in their Hearts, could not contain themselves from weeping; but with their whole Souls eagerly thirsted to approach, both with the Mouth of their Heart and of their Body, to thee, O God, the living Fountain; being in no wise able to moderate or satisfy their Hunger, but by receiving thy Body with all Joy and spiritual Greediness.

2. Oh! *true ardent Faith* of these Persons, being a probable Argument of thy sacred Presence! For they truly know their LORD in the breaking of Bread, whose Heart burneth so mightily within them, from JESUS his walking with them, St. *Luke* xxiv. Such Affection and Devotion as this, so vehement a Love and Burning, is often far from me. Be thou merciful to me, O good JESUS, sweet and gracious LORD; and grant me, thy poor Beggar, to feel, sometimes at least, in
the

the sac
Cordial
may be
Goodn
ing onc
ed the

3. I
me the
great
when
not at
that a
by thy
inflam
may b
vent
Com

That

1. T
to w
ceiv
wor
Go
Vi
un
thy

the sacred Communion, some little of the Cordial Affection of thy Love, that my *Faith* may be more strengthened, my *Hope* in thy Goodness increased, and that my *Charity*, being once perfectly enkindled, and having tasted the *Manna* of Heaven, may never decay.

3. Moreover, thy Mercy is able to give me the Grace I desire, and to visit me in thy great Clemency with the Spirit of Fervor, when it shall please thee: For tho' I burn not at present with so great a Desire as those that are so singularly devoted to thee; yet, by thy Grace, I desire to have this same great inflamed Desire; praying and wishing that I may be made Partaker with all such thy fervent Lovers, and be numbred in their holy Company.

C H A P. XV.

That the GRACE of DEVOTION is obtained by HUMILITY and SELF-DENIAL.

The Voice of the BELOVED.

I. **T**HOU oughtst to seek the Grace of Devotion earnestly, to ask it fervently, to wait for it patiently and confidently, to receive it thankfully, to keep it humbly, to work with it diligently, and to commit to GOD the Time and Manner of this heavenly Visitation, until it shall please him to come unto thee. Thou oughtst chiefly to humble thyself, when thou feelest inwardly little or

no Devotion; and yet not to be too much dejected, nor to grieve inordinately. God often giveth, in one short Moment, what he hath a long Time denied: He giveth sometimes in the End, that which in the Beginning of Prayer he deferr'd to grant.

2. If Grace were always presently given, and ever at hand with a Wish, it would be more than Man's Infirmary could well bear: Therefore the *Grace of Devotion* is to be expected with a good Hope and humble Patience. Yet impute it to thyself, and to thy Sins, when it is not given thee, or when it is secretly taken away. 'Tis sometimes a little Thing that hinders or hides Grace from us; if that may be called *little*, and not rather *great*, which hindereth so great a Good: But if thou remove this same, be it small or great, and perfectly overcome it, thou shalt have thy Desire.

3. For as soon as ever thou hast delivered thyself up to God with thy whole Heart, and neither seekest this nor that for thine own Pleasure or Will, but wholly placest thyself in him, thou shalt find thyself united and at Peace; for nothing will relish so well, and please thee so much, as the good Pleasure of the Divine Will. Whosoever therefore with a single Heart shall direct his Intention upwards to God, and purge himself of all inordinate

dinate
he shall
worthy
LORD
finds th
fectly
the mo
of him
entere
it elev

4.

mire,
him,
him,
Hand
be ble
Hear
a one
rist, c
beca
votio
and
of C

Tha
to

I.

all

dinate Love or Dislike of any created thing, he shall be the most fit to receive Grace, and worthy of the Gift of Devotion: For the LORD bestows his Blessing there, where he finds the Vessels empty. And the more perfectly one forsakes these Things below, and the more he dies to himself by the Contempt of himself, the more speedily Grace cometh, entereth in more plentifully, and the higher it elevateth the free Heart.

4. *Then shall he see and abound, he shall admire, and his Heart shall be enlarged within him, because the Hand of the LORD is with him, and he has put himself wholly into his Hand for ever. Behold, thus shall the Man be blessed that seeketh GOD with his whole Heart, and taketh not his Soul in vain. Such a one as this, in receiving the Holy Eucharist, obtains a great Grace of Divine Union; because he looks not towards his own Devotion and Comfort, but, above all Devotion and Comfort, regards the Honour and Glory of GOD.*

C H A P. XVI.

That we ought to lay open our NECESSITIES to CHRIST, and crave his GRACE.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

I. O MOST sweet and loving LORD, whom I now desire to receive with all Devotion, thou knowest my Weakness, and

and the Necessity which I endure ; in how great Evils and Vices I am immersed ; how often I am oppressed, tempted, troubled, and defiled : To thee I come for Remedy ; I pray to thee for Comfort and Succour : I speak to him that knows all Things, to whom all that is within me is manifest, and who alone can perfectly comfort and help me. Thou knowest what good Things I stand most in need of, and how poor I am in Virtues.

2. Behold, I stand before thee poor and naked begging thy Grace, and imploring thy Mercy : Feed thy hungry Beggar ; inflame my Coldness with the Fire of thy Love ; enlighten my Blindness with the Brightness of thy Presence ; turn all earthly Things to me into Bitterness ; all Things grievous and cross into Patience ; all Things below and created into Contempt and Oblivion : Lift up my Heart to thee in Heaven, and suffer me not to wander upon Earth : Be thou only sweet to me from henceforth for evermore ; for thou only art my Meat and my Drink, my Love and my Joy, my Sweetness and all my Good.

3. Oh ! that with thy Presence thou wouldst inflame, burn, and transform me into thyself, that I may be made one Spirit with thee, by the Grace of internal Union, and by the Melting of ardent Love ! Suffer me not to go from thee hungry and dry ; but
deal

deal wi
dealt v
marve
thee,
art a
ing ;
lighte

Of f

I. V

on a
ceiv
dev
the
De
cor
Lo
Ha
th
R
on

th
th
I
I
c

deal with me in thy Mercy, as thou hast often dealt wonderfully with thy Saints. What marvel, if I should be wholly set on fire by thee, and should die to myself; since thou art a *Fire* always burning, and never decaying; a *Love* purifying the Heart, and enlightening the Understanding.

C H A P. XVII.

Of fervent LOVE and vehement DESIRE to receive CHRIST.

The Voice of the DISCIPLE.

1. **W**ITH the greatest Devotion and burning Love, with all the Affection and Fervour of my Heart, I desire to receive thee, O LORD; as many Saints and devout Persons, who were most pleasing to thee in Holiness of Life, and most fervent in Devotion, have desired thee when they have communicated. O my GOD, my eternal Love, my whole Good, and never ending Happiness, I would gladly receive thee with the most vehement Desire, and most worthy Reverence, that any of the Saints ever had, or could feel.

2. And altho' I be unworthy to have all those Feelings of Devotion, yet I offer to thee the whole Affection of my Heart, as if I alone had all those highly pleasing inflamed Desires; yea, and whatsoever a godly Mind can conceive and desire; all this, with the greatest

greatest Reverence and most inward Affection, I offer and present to thee: I desire to reserve nothing to myself, but freely and most willingly to sacrifice myself, and all that is mine, to thee. O LORD, my GOD, my Creator and my Redeemer, I desire to receive thee this Day with such *Affection, Reverence, Praise, and Honour*; with such *Gratitude, Worthiness, and Love*; with such *Faith, Hope, and Purity*, as thy most holy Mother, the glorious Virgin *Mary*, received and desired thee, when she humbly and devoutly answer'd the Angel, who declared to her the Mystery of the Incarnation; *Behold the Handmaid of the LORD, let it be done unto me according to thy Word*, St. Luke i.

3. And as thy blessed Forerunner, the most excellent among the Saints, *John the Baptist*, in thy Presence leaped for Joy through the Holy Ghost, whilst he was as yet shut up in his Mother's Womb; and afterwards seeing JESUS walking amongst Men, humbling himself exceedingly, said with devout Affection, *The Friend of the Bridegroom; that standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth with Joy for the Voice of the Bridegroom*; St. John iii. So I also wish to be inflamed with great and holy Desires, and to present myself to thee with my whole Heart: Wherefore I here offer and present to thee the excessive Joys of all devout
Hearts,

Hearts, their ardent Affections, their Ecstasies and supernatural Illuminations, and heavenly Visions ; together with all the Virtues and Praises which are or shall be celebrated by all Creatures in Heaven and Earth ; for myself and all such as are recommended to my Prayers, that by all thou mayst be worthily praised and glorified for ever.

4. Receive my Wishes O LORD my GOD, and my Desires of giving thee infinite Praise and immense Blessing, which, according to the multitude of thy unspeakable Greatness, are most justly due to thee. These I render, and desire to render to thee every Day and every Moment ; and I invite and entreat all the heavenly Spirits, and all thy Faithful, with my Prayers and Affections, to join with me in giving thee Praises and Thanks.

5. Let all People, Tribes and Tongues, praise thee, and magnify thy holy and sweet Name, with the highest Jubilation and ardent Devotion : And let all who reverently and devoutly celebrate thy most high Sacrament, and receive it with full Faith, find Grace and Mercy at thy Hands, and humbly pray for me, a sinful Creature : And when they shall have obtained their desired Devotion and joyful Union, and shall depart from thy sacred heavenly Table, well comforted, and wonderfully nourished, let them vouchsafe to remember my poor Soul.

CHAP.

C H A P. XVIII.

That a MAN be not a curious SEARCHER into this SACRAMENT, but an humble FOLLOWER of CHRIST, submitting his SENSE to HOLY FAITH.

The Voice of the BELOVED.

I. **T**HOU must beware of curious and unprofitable searching into this most profound Sacrament, if thou wilt not sink into the Depth of Doubt. *He that is a Searcher of Majesty shall be oppressed by Glory,* Prov. xxv. GOD is able to work more than Man can understand. A pious and humble Enquiry after *Truth* is tolerable, which is always ready to be taught, and studies to walk in the sound Doctrine of the *Fathers*.

2. Blessed is that Simplicity that leaveth the difficult Ways of Disputes, and goeth on in the plain and sure Path of GOD's Commandments. Many have lost Devotion, whilst they would search into high Things. 'Tis *Faith* that is required of thee, and a *sincere Life*; not the Height of *Understanding*, nor diving deep into the Mysteries of GOD. If thou dost not understand nor comprehend those Things that are under thee, now shouldst thou comprehend those Things that are above thee? Submit thyself to GOD, and humble thy *Sense* to *Faith*, and the Light of Knowledge

ledge shall be given thee as far as shall be profitable and necessary for thee.

3. Some are grievously tempted about Faith and the Sacrament; but this is not to be imputed to them, but rather to the Enemy. Be not thou anxious, stand not to dispute with thy Thoughts, nor to answer the Doubts which the Devil suggests; but believe the Words of GOD, believe his Saints and Prophets, and the wicked Enemy will fly from thee. It is often very profitable to the Servant of GOD to suffer such Things; for the Devil tempteth not Unbelievers and Sinners, whom he already securely possesseth; but the Faithful and Devout he many ways tempteth and molesteth.

4. Go forward therefore with a sincere and undoubted Faith, and with an humble Reverence approach to this Sacrament; and whatsoever thou art not able to understand, commit securely to GOD, who is *Omnipotent*. GOD never deceiveth, but he is deceived that trusts too much to himself: GOD walketh with the Simple, and revealeth himself to the Humble; he giveth Understanding to little ones, openeth the Gate of Knowledge to pure Minds, and hideth his Grace from the Curious and Proud. *Human Reason* is weak, and may be deceived; but true *Faith* cannot be deceived.

5. All

5. All Reason and natural Search ought to follow Faith, and not to go before it, nor oppose it; for *Faith* and *Love* are here predominant, and work by hidden Ways in the most holy and super-excellent Sacrament God, who is eternal and incomprehensible and of infinite Power, doth great and inscrutable Things in Heaven and Earth, and there is no searching out his wonderful Works. If the Works of God were such as might be easily comprehended by human Reason, they could not be called wonderful and unspeakable.

F I N I S.

